

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE, OFFICIAL BID FORM  
and  
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

**\$55,000,000\***

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*(Burnet and Travis Counties, Texas)*

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds  
Series 2019**

*Bids Due  
January 22, 2019  
at 10:30 A.M. Central Time*

---

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

*This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Bonds defined and described herein. The invitation for bids on the Bonds is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form and the Preliminary Official Statement.*

## OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE

**\$55,000,000\***

### MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Burnet and Travis Counties, Texas)

### UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

#### THE SALE

**BONDS OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BID:** The Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Marble Falls Independent School District (the "District" or the "Issuer") is offering for sale at competitive bid its \$55,000,000\* Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds"). Bidders may submit bids for the Bonds by either of the following methods:

- (1) Submit bids electronically as described below in "BIDS BY INTERNET;" or
- (2) Submit bids by facsimile as described below in "BIDS BY FACSIMILE."

**BIDS BY INTERNET:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 10:30 A.M. Central Time, on January 22, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by internet **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid via the facilities of the i-Deal, LLC Parity System ("PARITY") and should, as a courtesy, register with PARITY by 9:30 A.M., Central Time, on January 22, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by internet.

In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by facsimile, as described below. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted.

The official time for the receipt of bids shall be the time maintained by PARITY. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of the Official Notice of Sale, Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement. To the extent that any instructions or directions set forth in PARITY conflict with this Official Notice of Sale, the terms of this Official Notice of Sale shall control. For further information about the PARITY System, potential bidders may contact i-Deal LLC at 1359 Broadway, 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10018, Telephone 212-849-5021.

An electronic bid made through the facilities of the PARITY System shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Bonds on the terms provided in this Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed, sealed bid delivered to the Issuer. The Issuer shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of PARITY, the use of such facilities being the sole risk of the prospective bidder.

**BIDS BY FACSIMILE:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by facsimile to the District's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Attention: Mr. Brian Grubbs at (214) 279-8683 by 10:30 A.M., Central Time, on January 22, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by facsimile shall not be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit a bid by facsimile should, as a courtesy, submit an email message to bgrubbs@samcocapital.com by 9:30 A.M., Central Time, on January 22, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by facsimile.

Neither the District nor SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is responsible for any failure of the Financial Advisor's or the bidder's fax machine. Bids received by facsimile after the bid deadline will not be accepted. Bidders who fax bids do so at their own risk. All such bids are binding on the bidder.

**PLACE AND TIME OF BID OPENING:** The bids for the Bonds will be publicly opened and read at the District at 10:30 A.M. Central Time, on January 22, 2019.

**AWARD OF THE BONDS:** The Board will take action to award the Bonds (or reject all bids) at a meeting to commence at 6:00 P.M., Central Time, on January 22, 2019.

#### THE BONDS

**DESCRIPTION:** The Bonds will be dated February 1, 2019 (the "Dated Date") with interest payable initially on August 15, 2019 and semiannually thereafter on each February 15 and August 15 until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

*\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

The Bonds will mature on August 15 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

### MATURITY SCHEDULE

| Maturity<br>8/15 | Principal<br>Amount* | Interest<br>Rate (%) | Maturity<br>8/15 | Principal<br>Amount* | Interest<br>Rate (%) |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 2020             | \$1,520,000          |                      | 2030             | \$2,830,000          |                      |
| 2021             | 1,780,000            |                      | 2031             | 2,930,000            |                      |
| 2022             | 2,050,000            |                      | 2032             | 3,045,000            |                      |
| 2023             | 1,490,000            |                      | 2033             | 3,165,000            |                      |
| 2024             | 1,535,000            |                      | 2034             | 3,290,000            |                      |
| 2025             | 2,405,000            |                      | 2035             | 3,425,000            |                      |
| 2026             | 2,475,000            |                      | 2036             | 3,560,000            |                      |
| 2027             | 2,550,000            |                      | 2037             | 3,710,000            |                      |
| 2028             | 2,640,000            |                      | 2038             | 3,855,000            |                      |
| 2029             | 2,735,000            |                      | 2039             | 4,010,000            |                      |

**ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS:** After selecting the winning bid, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the principal amortization schedule may be adjusted as determined by the District and its Financial Advisor in \$5,000 increments to reflect the actual interest rates and to create a substantially level debt service schedule for the District. Such adjustments will not change the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds by more than 10% from the amount set forth herein or change the principal amount due on the Bonds in any year by more than 20%. The dollar amount bid for the Bonds by the winning bidder (the "Purchaser") will be adjusted proportionately to reflect any increase or decrease in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds finally determined to be issued. The District will use its best efforts to communicate to the Purchaser any such adjustment within four (4) hours after the opening of the bids. Purchaser's compensation will be based upon the final par amount after any adjustment thereto, subsequent to the receipt and tabulation of the winning bid, within the aforementioned parameters.

In the event of any adjustment of the maturity schedule for the Bonds as described above, no rebidding or recalculation of the proposals submitted will be required or permitted. Any such adjustment of the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and/or the maturity schedule for the Bonds made by the District or its Financial Advisor shall be subsequent to the award of the Bonds to the Purchaser as determined pursuant to "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE – BASIS OF AWARD" herein and shall not affect such determination. The Purchaser may not withdraw its bid as a result of any changes made within the aforementioned limits.

**SERIAL BONDS AND/OR TERM BONDS:** Bidders may provide that all of the Bonds be issued as serial maturities or may provide that any two or more consecutive annual principal amounts for maturities 2029 through 2039 be combined into one or more term bonds (the "Term Bonds").

**MANDATORY SINKING FUND REDEMPTION:** If the successful bidder designates principal amounts of the Bonds to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption commencing on August 15 of the first year which has been combined to form such Term Bond and continuing on August 15 in each year thereafter until the stated maturity date of that Term Bond. The amount redeemed in any year will be equal to the principal amount for such year set forth in the table above under the caption "MATURITY SCHEDULE" (subject to adjustment as provided in "ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS"). Term Bonds to be redeemed in any year by mandatory sinking fund redemption will be redeemed at par and will be selected by lot from among the Term Bonds then subject to redemption. The District, at its option, may credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement Term Bonds of the maturity then subject to redemption which have been purchased and canceled by the District or have been redeemed and not theretofore applied as a credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement.

**OPTIONAL REDEMPTION:** The District reserves the right to redeem the Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 in whole or in part, in principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a redemption price of par, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

**AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE AND SECURITY FOR PAYMENT:** The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1) of the Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 and an order to be adopted by the District's Board on January 22, 2019 (the "Order"). The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from ad valorem taxes to be levied annually on all taxable property within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. (See "THE BONDS – Security" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE:** The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR:** The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times while the Bonds are outstanding, and any Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States and any state and duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. The Paying Agent/Registrar will maintain the Security Register containing the names and addresses of the registered owners of the Bonds.

In the Order the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, such Paying Agent/Registrar, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, is required to deliver the Security Register to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

In the event there is a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the District has agreed to notify each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at the address in the Security Register, stating the effective date of the change and the mailing address of the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

*\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

**BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM:** The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of DTC with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS IN THE ORDER:** Further details regarding the Bonds and certain covenants of the District contained in the Order are set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement, to which reference is made for all purposes.

## CONDITIONS OF THE SALE

**TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES:** The Bonds will be sold in one block, on an "All or None" basis, and at a price of not less than their par value, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from the Dated Date of the Bonds to the date of Initial Delivery (defined herein) of the Bonds. **No bid producing a cash premium on the Bonds that results in a dollar price of less than \$100.50 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered; provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS."** Bidders are invited to name the rate(s) of interest to be borne by the Bonds, provided that each rate bid must be in a multiple of 1/8 of 1% or 1/20 of 1% and the net effective interest rate for the Bonds (calculated in the manner required by Chapter 1204, as amended, Texas Government Code) must not exceed 15%. **The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 300 basis points (or 3.00% in rate). No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes which may be used.** All Bonds of one stated maturity must bear one and the same rate. No bids involving supplemental interest rates will be considered.

**BASIS OF AWARD:** The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein and which produces the **lowest True Interest Cost (defined herein) rate on the Bonds to the District.** The "True Interest Cost" rate is that rate which, when used to compute the total present value as of the **Dated Date** of all debt service payments on the Bonds on the basis of semi-annual compounding, produces an amount equal to the sum of the par value of the Bonds plus the premium bid (but not interest accrued from the Dated Date to the date of their Initial Delivery). In the event of a bidder's error in interest cost rate calculations, the interest rates, and premium set forth in the Official Bid Form will be considered as the intended bid.

In order to provide the District with information required to enable it to comply with certain conditions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") relating to the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners, the Purchaser will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the District (on or before the date of Initial Delivery of the Bonds) a certification as to their "issue price" (the "Issue Price Certificate") in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Official Notice of Sale, subject to the conditions set forth in "ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" below.

**COMPETITIVE BIDDING AND CERTIFICATE OF UNDERWRITER:** In the event that the District does not receive sufficient qualified bids to satisfy the competitive sale requirements of Treasury Regulation § 1.148-1(f)(3)(i), allowing the District to treat the reasonably expected initial offering price to the public as of the sale date as the issue price of the Bonds, the District will treat (i) the first price at which 10 percent of a maturity of the Bonds is sold to the public as the issue price of that maturity (the "10 percent rule") or (b) the initial offering price to the public as of the sale date of any maturity of the Bonds as the issue price of that maturity (the "hold the price rule"). If the 10 percent rule has not been satisfied as to any maturity of the Bonds, the Underwriter agrees to promptly report to SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. the prices at which it sells Bonds of that maturity to the public. This reporting obligation shall continue, whether or not the Bonds have been delivered, until the 10 percent rule has been satisfied. Alternative versions of the Certificate Regarding Issue Price are attached for use (i) when the competitive sale requirements of Treasury Regulation § 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) are met and (ii) when such requirements are not met.

**GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT:** A bank cashier's check, payable to the order of "Marble Falls Independent School District", in the amount of \$1,100,000 which is 2% of the proposed par value of the Bonds (the "Good Faith Deposit"), is required to accompany any bid. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser (as defined herein) will be retained uncashed by the District pending the Purchaser's compliance with the terms of its bid and this Official Notice of Sale. In the event the Purchaser should fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Bonds in accordance with its bid, then said check shall be cashed and accepted by the District as full and complete liquidated damages. The Good Faith Deposit may accompany the Official Bid Form or it may be submitted separately; however, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the District prior to the opening of the bids, and shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which authorizes its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. **The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery.** No interest will be allowed on the Good Faith Deposit. Checks accompanying bids other than the winning bid will be returned promptly after the bids are opened, and an award of the Bonds has been made by the District.

**OBLIGATION OF THE DISTRICT TO RECEIVE INFORMATION FROM PURCHASER:** Pursuant to Texas Government Code, Section 2252.908, the District may not award the Bonds to a bidder unless each entity executing the Official Bid Form either: (a) submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"), or (b) represents to the District by marking the appropriate box on the signature page of the Official Bid Form that the bidder is a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity (the "Publicly Traded Entity Representation"). In the event that the bidder's bid for the Bonds is the best bid received and at least one entity executing the Official Bid Form does not provide the Publicly Traded Entity Representation, the District, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the bidder. That notification will serve as the conditional verbal acceptance of the bid and the Purchaser must promptly file the Disclosure Form materials described below for the entity/entities not making the Publicly Traded Entity Representation. In the event that the bidder's bid for the Bonds is the best bid received and each entity executing the Official Bid Form provides the Publicly Traded Entity Representation, the District, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the bidder. That notification will serve as the final verbal acceptance of the bid, subject only to adoption of the order authorizing the sale of the Bonds on the date of the sale.

**PROCESS FOR COMPLETING THE DISCLOSURE FORM:** The Disclosure Form can be found at [https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf\\_info\\_form1295.htm](https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm), and reference should be made to the following information in order to complete it: (a) item 2 – Name of District ("Marble Falls Independent School District"), (b) item 3 – the identification number ("0001"), and (c) item 3 – description of the goods or services assigned to this contract by the District ("Marble Falls ISD Series 2019 Bonds").

**If one or more of the entities executing the Official Bid Form does not provide the Publicly Traded Entity Representation, the District cannot accept your bid unless and until each such entity:**

- (i) completes the Disclosure Form electronically at the TEC's "electronic portal", and
- (ii) prints, signs and delivers a copy of the Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's "electronic portal."

**These materials must be delivered electronically to the District's Bond Counsel at [jkyle@orrick.com](mailto:jkyle@orrick.com) and Financial Advisor at [bgrubbs@samcocapital.com](mailto:bgrubbs@samcocapital.com) no later than 3:00 p.m. (Central Time) on the sale date.**

If the Disclosure Form is required, time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the District, and no bid will be accepted by the District unless a completed Disclosure Form is received on time. If multiple entities are listed on the winning Official Bid Form, each such entity will be required to submit a Disclosure Form or make the Publicly Traded Entity Representation.

Neither the District nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither have an obligation nor undertake responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Bonds should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared, if necessary, to submit the completed form promptly upon notification from the District that its bid is the conditional winning bid.

**IRAN, SUDAN AND FOREIGN TERRORIST ORGANIZATIONS:** By submission of a bid, the bidder represents that, to the extent this bid form constitutes a governmental contract within the meaning of Section 2252.151 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, solely for purposes of compliance with Chapter 2252 of the Texas Government Code, and except to the extent otherwise required by applicable federal law, neither the bidder, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the bidder is a company listed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under Sections 806.051, 807.051, or 2252.153 of the Texas Government Code.

**ANTI-BOYCOTT VERIFICATION:** By submission of a bid, the bidder represents that, to the extent this bid form constitutes a contract for goods or services within the meaning of Section 2270.002 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, solely for purposes of compliance with Chapter 2270 of the Texas Government Code, and subject to applicable Federal law including without limitation, 50 U.S.C. Section 4607, neither the bidder, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the bidder (i) boycotts Israel or (ii) will boycott Israel through the term of this bid form. The terms "boycotts Israel" and "boycott Israel" as used in this paragraph have the meanings assigned to the term "boycott Israel" in Section 808.001 of the Texas Government Code, as amended.

**IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD:** For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

## **OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

To assist the Purchaser in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the "Rule"), of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"), the Issuer and the Purchaser contract and agree, by the submission and acceptance of the winning bid, as follows:

**COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 15c2-12 OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION:** The Issuer has approved and authorized distribution of the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement for dissemination to potential purchasers of the Bonds, but does not presently intend to prepare any other document or version thereof for such purpose, except as described below. Accordingly, the Issuer deems the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, within the meaning of the Rule, except for information relating to the offering prices, interest rates, final debt service schedule, selling compensation, identity of the Purchaser and other similar information, terms and provisions to be specified in the competitive bidding process. The Purchaser shall be responsible for promptly informing the Issuer of the initial offering yields of the Bonds.

Thereafter, the Issuer will complete and authorize distribution of the final Official Statement, being a modification of the Preliminary Official Statement, identifying the Purchaser and containing such omitted information. The Issuer does not intend to amend or supplement the Official Statement otherwise, except to take into account certain subsequent events, if any, as described below. By delivering the final Official Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto in the requested quantity to the Purchaser on or after the sale date, the Issuer intends the same to be final as of such date, within the meaning of the Rule. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Issuer makes no representation concerning the absence of material misstatements or omissions from the Official Statement, except only as and to the extent under "CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT" as described below.

**FINAL OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** The Issuer will furnish to the Purchaser, within seven (7) business days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of one hundred (100) copies of the Official Statement (and one hundred (100) copies of any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto), together with information regarding interest rates, and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Bonds. In addition, the District agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a "designated electronic format" (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The District consents to the distribution of such documents in a "designated electronic format." Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with the applicable MSRB rules. The Purchaser may arrange at its own expense to have the Official Statement reproduced and printed if it requires more copies and may also arrange, at its own expense and responsibility, for completion and perfection of the first or cover page of the Official Statement so as to reflect interest rates and other terms and information related to the reoffering of the Bonds. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the Issuer and the Bonds to subsequent purchasers of the Bonds, and the Issuer will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The Issuer's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be omitted or materially misleading, after the date of the Official Statement, shall terminate 25 days after the sale date.

**CHANGES TO OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** If, subsequent to the date of the Official Statement, the Issuer learns, through the ordinary course of business and without undertaking any investigation or examination for such purposes, or is notified by the Purchaser of any adverse event which causes the Official Statement to be incomplete or materially misleading, and unless the Purchaser elects to terminate its obligation to purchase the Bonds, as described below under "DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS – CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY," the Issuer will promptly prepare and supply to the Purchaser an appropriate amendment or supplement to the Official Statement in a "designated electronic format" satisfactory to the Purchaser.

**CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** At the time of payment for and delivery of the hereinafter defined Initial Bond ("Initial Delivery"), the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the Issuer, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the Issuer contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the

date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of Initial Delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the Issuer and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the Issuer, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the Issuer believes to be reliable and the Issuer has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the Issuer, since June 30, 2018, the date of the last financial statements of the Issuer appearing in the Official Statement. The Official Statement and this Official Notice of Sale will be approved as to form and content and the use thereof in the offering of the Bonds will be authorized, ratified and approved by the Board on the date of sale, and the Purchaser will be furnished, upon request, at the time of payment for and the Initial Delivery of the Bonds, a certified copy of such approval, duly executed by the proper officials of the Issuer.

**CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT:** The District has agreed in the Order to provide certain periodic information and notices of certain events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION". The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Bonds is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Order containing the agreement described under such heading.

**COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS:** During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule. However, in connection with certain rating actions taken on April 23, 2010, and on November 30, 2011, the District filed an event notice with the MSRB on June 30, 2014.

## **DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS**

**INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL BOND:** Initial Delivery will be accomplished by the issuance of one fully registered Bond in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to the Purchaser (the "Initial Bond"), signed by the duly appointed officers of the Board, by their manual or facsimile signatures, approved by the Texas Attorney General, and registered and manually signed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. Initial Delivery will be at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Bond, it shall be immediately canceled and one definitive Bond for each maturity in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to Cede & Co. will be delivered to DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Bonds must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the District, or as otherwise directed by the District. The Purchaser will be given six business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Bonds. It is anticipated that the delivery of the Initial Bond can be made on or about February 19, 2019, but if for any reason the District is unable to make delivery by March 19, 2019, then the District shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend its obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds an additional thirty days. If the Purchaser does not elect to extend its offer within six days thereafter, then its Good Faith Deposit will be returned, and both the District and the Purchaser shall be relieved of any further obligation. In no event shall the District be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Bonds, provided that such failure is due to circumstances beyond the District's reasonable control.

**CUSIP NUMBERS:** It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will be printed on the Bonds, but neither the failure to print such number on any Bond nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Bonds in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Bonds shall be paid by the Issuer; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau's charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Purchaser.

**CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY:** The obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds is subject to the following conditions: the issuance of an approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, the Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel and the certificate regarding the Official Statement, and the non-occurrence of the events described below under the caption "NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE". In addition, if the Issuer fails to comply with its obligations described under "OFFICIAL STATEMENT" above, the Purchaser may terminate its contract to purchase the Bonds by delivering written notice to the Issuer within five (5) days thereafter.

**NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE:** The obligations of the Purchaser to take up and pay for the Bonds, and of the Issuer to deliver the Initial Bonds, are subject to the condition that, up to the time of delivery of and receipt of payment for the Initial Bonds, there shall have been no material adverse change in the affairs of the Issuer subsequent to the date of sale from that set forth in the Official Statement, as it may have been finalized, supplemented or amended through the date of Initial Delivery.

**LEGAL OPINIONS:** The District will furnish the Purchaser a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas as to the Bonds, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of Bond Counsel, regarding the legality and validity of the Bonds issued in compliance with the provisions of the Order. (See "LITIGATION" and "LEGAL MATTERS" in the Official Statement and "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" attached to the Official Statement.)

**CHANGE IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS:** At any time before the Bonds are tendered for Initial Delivery to the Purchaser, the Purchaser may withdraw its bid if the interest on obligations such as the Bonds shall be declared to be includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, either by Treasury regulations, by ruling or administrative guidance of the Internal Revenue Service, by a decision of any federal court, or by the terms of any federal income tax legislation enacted subsequent to the date of this Official Notice of Sale.

## **GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS**

**RATING:** The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"), based upon the Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" in the Official Statement.). The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "AA-" by S&P. There is no assurance that such rating will continue for any given period of time or that it will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of said rating company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds. Neither the District nor the Purchaser has undertaken any responsibility to advise owners of the Bonds of any lowering or withdrawal of such rating.

**REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE:** No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon exemptions provided in such Act. The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The Issuer assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The Issuer agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and expense and within reasonable limits, in registering or qualifying the Bonds, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary, but the District will in no instance execute a general consent to service of process in any state in which the Bonds are offered for sale.

**ADDITIONAL COPIES:** Subject to the limitations described herein, additional copies of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement may be obtained from SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024.

On the date of the sale, the Board will, in the Order, approve the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, and authorize its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

ATTEST:

/s/ Kevin Naumann  
President, Board of Trustees

/s/ Gary Boshears  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

Dated: January 14, 2019

# OFFICIAL BID FORM

President and Board of Trustees  
Marble Falls Independent School District  
1800 Colt Circle  
Marble Falls, Texas 78654

January 22, 2019

Ladies & Gentlemen:

Reference is made to your Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement dated January 14, 2019 of \$55,000,000\* MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds"), both of which constitute a part hereof (the terms of which are hereto agreed as evidenced by our submission of this bid).

For your legally issued Bonds, as described in said Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement, we will pay you a price of par value thereof plus accrued interest from their date to the date of delivery to us, plus a cash premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_ **(no bid producing a cash premium that results in a dollar price of less than \$100.50 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered)** for Bonds maturing and bearing interest as follows:

| Maturity<br>(8/15) | Principal<br>Amount* | Interest<br>Rate (%) | Maturity<br>(8/15) | Principal<br>Amount* | Interest<br>Rate (%) |
|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 2020               | \$1,520,000          | _____                | 2030               | \$2,830,000          | _____                |
| 2021               | 1,780,000            | _____                | 2031               | 2,930,000            | _____                |
| 2022               | 2,050,000            | _____                | 2032               | 3,045,000            | _____                |
| 2023               | 1,490,000            | _____                | 2033               | 3,165,000            | _____                |
| 2024               | 1,535,000            | _____                | 2034               | 3,290,000            | _____                |
| 2025               | 2,405,000            | _____                | 2035               | 3,425,000            | _____                |
| 2026               | 2,475,000            | _____                | 2036               | 3,560,000            | _____                |
| 2027               | 2,550,000            | _____                | 2037               | 3,710,000            | _____                |
| 2028               | 2,640,000            | _____                | 2038               | 3,855,000            | _____                |
| 2029               | 2,735,000            | _____                | 2039               | 4,010,000            | _____                |

(Interest to Accrue from the Dated Date)

Of the principal maturities set forth in the table above, we have created term bonds for stated maturities \_\_\_\_\_ through \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Term Bonds") as indicated in the following table (which may include multiple Term Bonds, one Term Bond or no Term Bond if none is indicated). For those years which have been combined into a Term Bond, the principal amount shown in the table above will be the mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts in such years except that the amount shown in the year of the Term Bond maturity date will mature in such year. The Term Bonds created are as follows:

| Term Bond<br>Maturity Date<br>August 15 | Year of<br>First Mandatory<br>Redemption | Principal<br>Amount of<br>Term Bond | Interest<br>Rate |
|---|--|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| _____                                   | _____                                    | _____                               | _____            |
| _____                                   | _____                                    | _____                               | _____            |
| _____                                   | _____                                    | _____                               | _____            |

Our calculation (which is not a part of this bid) of the interest cost in accordance with the above bid is:

TRUE INTEREST COST \_\_\_\_\_%

By accepting this bid, we understand the District will provide the copies of the Official Statement and of any amendments or supplements thereto in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale.

The Initial Bond(s) shall be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_ ("Purchaser"). We will advise DTC of registration instructions at least five business days prior to the date set for Initial Delivery. It is the obligation of the Purchaser of the Bonds to complete the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire.

Cashier's Check of the \_\_\_\_\_ (bank), \_\_\_\_\_ (location), in the amount of \$1,100,000 which represents our Good Faith Deposit is attached hereto or has been made available to you prior to the opening of the bid, in accordance with the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale and the Preliminary Official Statement. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery upon completion of the closing.

We agree to accept delivery of the Initial Bond(s) through DTC and make payment for the Initial Bond(s) in immediately available funds at The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas, no later than 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on February 19, 2019, or thereafter on the date the Initial Bond(s) are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale.

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale.



The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to the Notice of Sale relating to the Bonds to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds.

The undersigned agrees to the provisions of the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" and, as evidence thereof agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the District by the date of delivery of the Bonds, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to the District (as provided under "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" in the Official Notice of Sale).

The bidder represents that, to the extent this bid form constitutes a governmental contract within the meaning of Section 2252.151 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, solely for purposes of compliance with Chapter 2252 of the Texas Government Code, and except to the extent otherwise required by applicable federal law, neither the bidder, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the bidder is a company listed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under Sections 806.051, 807.051, or 2252.153 of the Texas Government Code.

The bidder represents that, to the extent this bid form constitutes a contract for goods or services within the meaning of Section 2270.002 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, solely for purposes of compliance with Chapter 2270 of the Texas Government Code, and subject to applicable Federal law including without limitation, 50 U.S.C. Section 4607, neither the bidder, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the bidder (i) boycotts Israel or (ii) will boycott Israel through the term of this bid form. The terms "boycotts Israel" and "boycott Israel" as used in this paragraph have the meanings assigned to the term "boycott Israel" in Section 808.001 of the Texas Government Code, as amended.

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

Respectfully submitted,

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Purchaser)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature - Title)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Telephone)

**Check One:**

\_\_\_\_\_ Disclosure Form(s) - Each entity executing this Official Bid Form will provide a Disclosure Form as and when required by the Official Notice of Sale.

\_\_\_\_\_ Publicly Traded Entity Representation - The bidder hereby represents to the District that it is a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity.

**ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE**

THE FOREGOING BID IS IN ALL THINGS HEREBY ACCEPTED this January 22, 2019 by order of the Board of Trustees of the Marble Falls Independent School District.

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

\_\_\_\_\_  
President, Board of Trustees

**\$55,000,000\***  
**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

**CERTIFICATE REGARDING ISSUE PRICE – COMPETITIVE BIDDING REQUIREMENTS MET**

The undersigned hereby certifies as follows with respect to the sale of Marble Falls Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the “Bonds”):

1. The undersigned is the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters (the “Underwriter”) that has purchased the Bonds from Marble Falls Independent School District (the “District”) at competitive sale.

2. The Underwriter was not given the opportunity to review other bids prior to submitting its bid, and the bid submitted by the Underwriter constituted a firm bid to purchase the Bonds.

3. As of the sale date, the reasonably expected initial offering prices of the Bonds to the public by the Underwriter (expressed as a percentage of principal amount and exclusive of accrued interest) is as set forth below:

| Principal<br><u>Amount</u> | Year of<br><u>Maturity</u> | Issue<br><u>Price</u> | Principal<br><u>Amount</u> | Year of<br><u>Maturity</u> | Issue<br><u>Price</u> |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|

[insert table]

4. The Underwriter [has] [has not] purchased bond insurance for the Bonds. The bond insurance has been purchased from \_\_\_\_\_ (the “Insurer”) for a fee of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (net of any nonguarantee cost, e.g., rating agency fees). The amount of such fee is set forth in the Insurer's commitment and does not include any payment for any direct or indirect services other than the transfer of credit risk, unless the compensation for those other services is separately stated, reasonable, and excluded from such fee. Such fee does not exceed a reasonable, arms-length charge for the transfer of credit risk. The present value of the debt service savings expected to be realized as a result of such insurance exceeds the amount of the fee set forth above. For this purpose, present value is computed using the yield on the Bonds, determined by taking into account the amount of the fee set forth above, as the discount rate. No portion of the fee payable to the Insurer is refundable upon redemption of any of the Bonds in an amount which would exceed the portion of such fee that had not been earned.

5. The term “public” means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company or corporation) other than an underwriter or a related party to an underwriter. A “related party” generally means two or more persons with greater than 50 percent common ownership, directly or indirectly.

6. Sale date means the first date on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of the Bonds. The sale date of the Bonds is \_\_\_\_\_.

7. The undersigned understands that the statements made herein will be relied upon by the District Bond Counsel in complying with the conditions imposed by the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, on the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners for federal income tax purposes.

EXECUTED AND DELIVERED this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Underwriter or Manager)

By \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

CERTIFICATE REGARDING ISSUE PRICE – COMPETITIVE BIDDING REQUIREMENTS NOT MET

The undersigned hereby certifies as follows with respect to the sale of Marble Falls Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds (the “Bonds”):

1. The undersigned is the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters (the “Underwriter”) that has purchased the Bonds from Marble Falls Independent School District (the “District”).

2. As of the date of this Certificate, for each of the following maturities (the “Sold Maturities”), the first price at which a substantial amount (at least ten percent) of such maturity was sold to the public (expressed as a percentage of principal amount and exclusive of accrued interest) is set forth below:

| <u>Principal<br/>Amount</u> | <u>Year of<br/>Maturity</u> | <u>Issue<br/>Price</u> | <u>Principal<br/>Amount</u> | <u>Year of<br/>Maturity</u> | <u>Issue<br/>Price</u> |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|

[insert table]

3. As of the sale date for the Bonds, each of the following maturities (the “Unsold Maturities”) was offered to the public for purchase at the price (expressed as a percentage of principal amount and exclusive of accrued interest) set forth below:

| <u>Principal<br/>Amount</u> | <u>Year of<br/>Maturity</u> | <u>Issue<br/>Price</u> | <u>Principal<br/>Amount</u> | <u>Year of<br/>Maturity</u> | <u>Issue<br/>Price</u> |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|

[insert table]

4. As set forth in the Notice of Sale, the Underwriter has agreed in writing that, for each of the Unsold Maturities, the Underwriter would neither offer nor sell any of the Bonds of such maturity to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price for each maturity, as set forth in the pricing wire or equivalent communication for the Bonds attached to this Certificate, during the Offering Period for such maturity, nor would the Underwriter permit a related party to do so. Pursuant to such agreement, the Underwriter has neither offered nor sold any of the Unsold Maturities at a price higher than the respective initial offering price for that maturity of the Bonds during the Offering Period.

5. The Underwriter [has] [has not] purchased bond insurance for the Bonds. The bond insurance has been purchased from \_\_\_\_\_ (the “Insurer”) for a fee of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (net of any nonguarantee cost, e.g., rating agency fees). The amount of such fee is set forth in the Insurer's commitment and does not include any payment for any direct or

indirect services other than the transfer of credit risk, unless the compensation for those other services is separately stated, reasonable, and excluded from such fee. Such fee does not exceed a reasonable, arms-length charge for the transfer of credit risk. The present value of the debt service savings expected to be realized as a result of such insurance exceeds the amount of the fee set forth above. For this purpose, present value is computed using the yield on the Bonds, determined by taking into account the amount of the fee set forth above, as the discount rate. No portion of the fee payable to the Insurer is refundable upon redemption of any of the Bonds in an amount which would exceed the portion of such fee that had not been earned.

6. The term “public” means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company or corporation) other than an underwriter or a related party to an underwriter. A “related party” generally means two or more persons with greater than 50 percent common ownership, directly or indirectly.

7. The term “sale date” means the first date on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of the Bonds. The sale date of the Bonds is \_\_\_\_\_.

8. The term “Offering Period means, with respect to an Unsold Maturity, the period beginning on the Sale Date and ending on the earlier of (a) the close of the fifth business day after the Sale Date or (b) the date on which the Underwriter has sold at least 10 percent of such Unsold Maturity to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price for such Unsold Maturity.

9. The undersigned understands that the statements made herein will be relied upon by the District and Bond Counsel complying with the conditions imposed by the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, on the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners for federal income tax purposes.

EXECUTED AND DELIVERED this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2019.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Underwriter or Manager)

By \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

## BOND YEARS

**\$55,000,000\***

### MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(Burnet & Travis Counties, Texas)

### UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

Dated: February 1, 2019

Due: August 15

| Year | Amount*      | Bond Years* |                          |
|------|--------------|-------------|--------------------------|
|      |              | Bond Years  | Cumulative<br>Bond Years |
| 2020 | \$ 1,520,000 | 2,262.9760  | 2,262.9760               |
| 2021 | 1,780,000    | 4,430.0640  | 6,693.0400               |
| 2022 | 2,050,000    | 7,152.0400  | 13,845.0800              |
| 2023 | 1,490,000    | 6,688.3120  | 20,533.3920              |
| 2024 | 1,535,000    | 8,425.3080  | 28,958.7000              |
| 2025 | 2,405,000    | 15,605.5640 | 44,564.2640              |
| 2026 | 2,475,000    | 18,534.7800 | 63,099.0440              |
| 2027 | 2,550,000    | 21,646.4400 | 84,745.4840              |
| 2028 | 2,640,000    | 25,050.4320 | 109,795.9160             |
| 2029 | 2,735,000    | 28,686.8680 | 138,482.7840             |
| 2030 | 2,830,000    | 32,513.3040 | 170,996.0880             |
| 2031 | 2,930,000    | 36,592.1840 | 207,588.2720             |
| 2032 | 3,045,000    | 41,073.3960 | 248,661.6680             |
| 2033 | 3,165,000    | 45,857.0520 | 294,518.7200             |
| 2034 | 3,290,000    | 50,958.1520 | 345,476.8720             |
| 2035 | 3,425,000    | 56,474.1400 | 401,951.0120             |
| 2036 | 3,560,000    | 62,260.1280 | 464,211.1400             |
| 2037 | 3,710,000    | 68,593.4480 | 532,804.5880             |
| 2038 | 3,855,000    | 75,129.3240 | 607,933.9120             |
| 2039 | 4,010,000    | 82,160.0880 | 690,094.0000             |

Average Maturity = 12.547

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS - ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.

**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**  
**Dated: January 14, 2019**

**NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

*In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel, based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. In the further opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any other tax consequences related to the ownership or disposition of, or the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.*

**\$55,000,000\***  
**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Burnet and Travis Counties, Texas)**  
**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019**

**Dated Date: February 1, 2019**

**Due: August 15, as shown on the inside cover page**

The Marble Falls Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the Marble Falls Independent School District (the "District") on November 6, 2018 and the order (the "Order") to be adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on January 22, 2019. The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date specified above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing August 15, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date (the "Record Date").

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for the purpose of (i) construction, acquisition and equipment of school buildings in the District (including the rehabilitation, renovation, expansion and improvement thereof), the purchase of new school buses, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose").

The Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. Any Term Bonds (defined herein) shall be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Redemption").

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
(On Inside Cover)

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the initial purchaser (the "Purchaser") subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas, Bond Counsel. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the services of DTC on or about February 19, 2019.*

**BIDS DUE JANUARY 22, 2019 BY 10:30 A.M. CENTRAL TIME**

*\*Preliminary, subject to change.*

**\$55,000,000\***  
**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A POLITICAL SUBDIVISION OF THE STATE OF TEXAS LOCATED IN BURNET AND TRAVIS COUNTIES, TEXAS)**  
**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

**MATURITY SCHEDULE\***  
Base CUSIP No.: 566030<sup>(1)</sup>

| <b>Maturity<br/>Date<br/>8/15</b> | <b>Principal<br/>Amount*</b> | <b>Interest<br/>Rate</b> | <b>Initial<br/>Yield</b> | <b>CUSIP No.<br/>Suffix<sup>(1)</sup></b> |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| 2020                              | \$1,520,000                  |                          |                          |   |
| 2021                              | 1,780,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2022                              | 2,050,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2023                              | 1,490,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2024                              | 1,535,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2025                              | 2,405,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2026                              | 2,475,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2027                              | 2,550,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2028                              | 2,640,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2029                              | 2,735,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2030                              | 2,830,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2031                              | 2,930,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2032                              | 3,045,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2033                              | 3,165,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2034                              | 3,290,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2035                              | 3,425,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2036                              | 3,560,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2037                              | 3,710,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2038                              | 3,855,000                    |                          |                          |   |
| 2039                              | 4,010,000                    |                          |                          |   |

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

*\*Preliminary, subject to change.*

<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.



## MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

### BOARD OF TRUSTEES

| <u>Name</u>                      | <u>Date<br/>Initially<br/>Elected</u> | <u>Current<br/>Term<br/>Expires</u> | <u>Occupation</u>            |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Kevin Naumann, President         | 2009                                  | 2021                                | EMS Technician               |
| Lee Ann Johnson , Vice President | 2014                                  | 2020                                | Dental Association Executive |
| Gary Boshears, Secretary         | 2016                                  | 2019                                | Police Chief                 |
| Larry Berkman, Member            | 2014                                  | 2020                                | Basketball Coach             |
| Rick Edwards, Member             | 2018                                  | 2019                                | Risk Management              |
| Alex Payson, Member              | 2017                                  | 2020                                | Business Owner               |
| Kevin Virdell, Member            | 2016                                  | 2020                                | Bank President               |

### APPOINTED OFFICIALS

| <u>Name</u>        | <u>Position</u>  | <u>Length of<br/>Education Service</u> | <u>Length of<br/>Service<br/>with the District</u> |
|--------------------|--|--|--|
| Dr. Chris Allen    | Superintendent   | 22 Years                               | 3 Years  |
| Dr. Wes Cunningham | Assistant Superintendent of Curriculum and Instruction | 25 Years                               | 3 Years  |
| Jeff Gasaway       | Assistant Superintendent of Administration             | 22 Years                               | 2 Years  |
| Melissa Lafferty   | Executive Director of Finance                          | 8 Years                                | 1 Year   |

### CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas | Bond Counsel                 |
| SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas         | Financial Advisor            |
| Lott, Vernon & Company, P.C., Temple, Texas       | Certified Public Accountants |

For additional information, contact:

Dr. Chris Allen  
Superintendent  
Marble Falls ISD  
1800 Colt Circle  
Marble Falls, Texas 78654  
(830) 693-4357

Brian Grubbs / Doug Whitt / Robert White  
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.  
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210  
Plano, Texas 75024  
(214) 765-1470  
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

## USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended ("Rule 15c2-12"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the District with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the District as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the District, the Financial Advisor or the Purchaser. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency and the District, respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE PURCHASER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THE BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE PURCHASER MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC") OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM, OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY ("TEA") DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY DTC AND TEA, RESPECTIVELY.

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT CONTAINS "FORWARD-LOOKING" STATEMENTS WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 21E OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED. SUCH STATEMENTS MAY INVOLVE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN RISKS, UNCERTAINTIES AND OTHER FACTORS WHICH MAY CAUSE THE ACTUAL RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS TO BE DIFFERENT FROM THE FUTURE RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED BY SUCH FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED THAT THE ACTUAL RESULTS COULD DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE SET FORTH IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THIS ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|   |    |   |    |
|---|----|---|----|
| SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT.....                  | 1  | THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE         |    |
| INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT .....                                    | 2  | MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT .....      | 13 |
| THE BONDS.....  | 2  | THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM.....    | 13 |
| Authorization and Purpose.....                                  | 2  | TAX RATE LIMITATIONS .....                          | 25 |
| General Description .....                                       | 2  | DEBT LIMITATIONS .....                              | 26 |
| Redemption .....  | 2  | EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-              |    |
| Selection of Bonds Redeemed in Part .....                       | 2  | EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS .....                           | 26 |
| Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices .....                      | 2  | RATING .....  | 27 |
| Security .....  | 3  | LEGAL MATTERS.....                                  | 27 |
| Permanent School Fund Guarantee .....                           | 3  | TAX MATTERS .....                                   | 27 |
| Legality.....   | 3  | INVESTMENT POLICIES.....                            | 28 |
| Payment Record.....   | 3  | REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE .. | 29 |
| Amendments .....  | 3  | FINANCIAL ADVISOR.....                              | 30 |
| Defeasance .....  | 3  | LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC  |    |
| REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES.....                                | 4  | FUNDS IN TEXAS .....                                | 30 |
| BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM .....                                    | 4  | CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION .....          | 30 |
| REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE.....                        | 5  | LITIGATION.....                                     | 31 |
| AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES.....                                  | 6  | FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS .....                    | 31 |
| THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT.....           | 9  | WINNING BIDDER .....                                | 32 |
| STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN                  |    | CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT .....       | 32 |
| TEXAS .....   | 10 | CONCLUDING STATEMENT.....                           | 32 |
| CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM.....                       | 10 |   |    |
| Financial Information of the District .....                     |    | Appendix A  |    |
| General Information Regarding the District and Its Economy..... |    | Appendix B  |    |
| Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.....                      |    | Appendix C  |    |
| Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2018 .....  |    | Appendix D  |    |

## SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without the entire Official Statement.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>The District</b>                    | The Marble Falls Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Burnet and Travis Counties, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.  |
| <b>The Bonds</b>                       | The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$55,000,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 (the "Election") and the order to be adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on January 22, 2019 (the "Order"). Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for the purpose of (i) construction, acquisition and equipment of school buildings in the District (including the rehabilitation, renovation, expansion and improvement thereof), the purchase of new school buses, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose"). |
| <b>Paying Agent/Registrar</b>          | The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of the Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).  |
| <b>Security</b>                        | The Bonds will constitute direct obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limitation as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be further secured by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").  |
| <b>Redemption</b>                      | The Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Redemption"). Any Term Bonds (defined herein) shall be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Redemption").   |
| <b>Permanent School Fund Guarantee</b> | The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").   |
| <b>Rating</b>                          | The Bonds are expected to be rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "AA-" by S&P. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" and "RATING" herein.)  |
| <b>Tax Matters</b>                     | In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel, based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986. In the further opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any other tax consequences related to the ownership or disposition of, or the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. (See "TAX MATTERS" herein.)                     |
| <b>Payment Record</b>                  | The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.   |
| <b>Legal Opinion</b>                   | Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").   |
| <b>Delivery</b>                        | When issued, anticipated to be on or about February 19, 2019.   |

## INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the Marble Falls Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in Burnet and Travis Counties, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") identified on page ii hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds and the order (the "Order") to be adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District (the "Board") on January 22, 2019 authorizing the issuance of the Bonds, and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request by writing the Marble Falls Independent School District, 1800 Colt Circle, Marble Falls, Texas 78654 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024 by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as of its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Official Statement relating to the Bonds will be submitted by the Purchaser of the Bonds to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

## THE BONDS

### Authorization and Purpose

The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$55,000,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), as amended, Texas Education Code, an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 (the "Election") and the Order. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for the purpose of (i) construction, acquisition and equipment of school buildings in the District (including the rehabilitation, renovation, expansion and improvement thereof), the purchase of new school buses, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds.

### General Description

The Bonds will bear interest from February 1, 2019 (the "Dated Date"). The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on page ii of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable on August 15, 2019 and on each February 15 and August 15 until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of \$5,000 of principal or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's books on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of CEDE & CO. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), payments of principal of and interest on the Bonds will be made as described in "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

### Redemption

The Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. In addition, any consecutive maturities of Bonds grouped into one or more "term" Bonds (the "Term Bonds") shall be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the applicable provisions of the Order, which provisions shall be disclosed in the final Official Statement.

### Selection of Bonds Redeemed in Part

If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed.

### Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN, WHETHER OR NOT THE REGISTERED OWNER RECEIVES SUCH NOTICE. NOTICE HAVING BEEN SO GIVEN, THE BONDS CALLED FOR REDEMPTION SHALL BECOME DUE AND PAYABLE ON THE SPECIFIED REDEMPTION DATE, AND NOTWITHSTANDING THAT ANY BOND OR PORTION THEREOF HAS NOT BEEN SURRENDERED FOR PAYMENT, INTEREST ON SUCH BOND OR PORTION THEREOF SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

### **Security**

The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from an ad valorem tax annually levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, on all taxable property within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

### **Permanent School Fund Guarantee**

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the TEA for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

### **Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

### **Payment Record**

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

### **Amendments**

The District, may, without the consent of or notice to any holders of the Bonds, from time to time and at any time, amend the Order in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the holders of the Bonds, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the District may, with the written consent of holders of the Bonds holding a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Order; provided, however, that, without the consent of all holders of outstanding Bonds, no such amendment, addition, or rescission shall (1) extend the time or times of payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds, reduce the principal amount thereof, the redemption price, or the rate of interest thereon, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of, redemption premium, if any, or interest on the Bonds, (2) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond, or (3) reduce the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required to be held by holders for consent to any such amendment, addition, or rescission.

### **Defeasance**

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, on the Bonds, plus interest thereon to the due date thereof (whether such due date be by reason of maturity, redemption or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with the Paying Agent/Registrar or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money sufficient to make such payment, (2) Government Obligations (defined below) to mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds, or (3) a combination of money and Government Obligations together so certified sufficient to make such payment. The District has additionally reserved the right in the Order, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Government Obligations for the Government Obligations originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District money in excess of the amount required for such defeasance. The Order provides that "Government Obligations" means (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date of their acquisition or purchase by the District, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and, on the date of their acquisition or purchase by the District, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, or (d) any additional securities and obligations hereafter authorized by Texas law as eligible for use to accomplish the discharge of obligations such as the Bonds. District officials may restrict such eligible securities as deemed necessary. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities acquired to defease any Bonds, or those for any other Government Obligations, will be maintained at any particular rating category. Further, there is no assurance that current Texas law will not be amended in a manner that expands or contracts the list of permissible defeasance securities (such list consisting of those securities identified in clauses (a) through (c) above), or any rating requirement thereon, that may be purchased with defeasance proceeds relating to the Bonds ("Defeasance Proceeds"), though the District has reserved the right to utilize any additional securities for such purpose in the event the aforementioned list is expanded. Because the Order does not contractually limit such permissible defeasance securities and expressly recognizes the ability of the District to use lawfully available Defeasance

Proceeds to defease all or any portion of the Bonds, registered owners of Bonds are deemed to have consented to the use of Defeasance Proceeds to purchase such other defeasance securities, notwithstanding the fact that such defeasance securities may not be of the same investment quality as those currently identified under Texas law as permissible defeasance securities.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded as outstanding or unpaid. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, the District has the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Defeasance of the Bonds cancels the Permanent School Fund guarantee with respect to such defeased Bonds.

### **REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES**

The Order does not establish specific events of default with respect to the Bonds or provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interests of the bondholders upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition. Under Texas law, there is no right to the acceleration of maturity of the Bonds upon the failure of the District to observe any covenant under the Order. Such registered owner's only practical remedy, if a default occurs, is a mandamus or mandatory injunction proceeding to compel the District to levy, assess and collect an annual ad valorem tax sufficient to pay principal of and interest on the Bonds as it becomes due. The enforcement of any such remedy may be difficult and time consuming and a registered owner could be required to enforce such remedy on a periodic basis.

On June 30, 2006, the Texas Supreme Court ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006) ("Tooke") that a waiver of sovereign immunity must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. In so ruling, the Court declared that statutory language such as "sue and be sued", in and of itself, did not constitute a clear and unambiguous waiver of sovereign immunity. In *Tooke*, the Court noted the enactment in 2005 of sections 271.151-.160, Texas Local Government Code (the "Local Government Immunity Waiver Act"), which, according to the Court, waives "immunity from suit for contract claims against most local governmental entities in certain circumstances." The Local Government Immunity Waiver Act covers school districts and relates to contracts entered into by school districts for providing goods or services to school districts.

Neither the remedy of mandamus nor any other type of injunctive relief was at issue in *Tooke*, and it is unclear whether *Tooke* will be construed to have any effect with respect to the exercise of mandamus, as such remedy has been interpreted by Texas courts. In general, Texas courts have held that a writ of mandamus may be issued to require public officials to perform ministerial acts that clearly pertain to their duties. Texas courts have held that a ministerial act is defined as a legal duty that is prescribed and defined with a precision and certainty that leaves nothing to the exercise of discretion or judgment, though mandamus is not available to enforce purely contractual duties. However, mandamus may be used to require a public officer to perform legally-imposed ministerial duties necessary for the performance of a valid contract to which the State or a political subdivision of the State is a party (including the payment of monies due under a contract).

The District is also eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity, which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of another federal or state court); and, the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors of political subdivisions of the State relative to their creditors and may be limited by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due.

### **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

*This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Purchaser believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

*The District and the Purchaser cannot and do not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC participants, (2) DTC participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds), or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC participants are on file with DTC.*

The DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry

transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only System for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to The District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor Bonds depository). In that event, physical Bond certificates will be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry-Only System has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

#### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

### **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

#### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

#### **Successor Paying Agent/Registrar**

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District

has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

### **Initial Registration**

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to CEDE & CO., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

### **Future Registration**

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

### **Record Date For Interest Payment**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

### **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar are required (1) to make any transfer or exchange during a period beginning at the opening of business 45 days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (2) to transfer or exchange any Bonds so selected for redemption when such redemption is scheduled to occur within 45 calendar days; provided however, that such limitation of transfer is not applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Bond.

### **Replacement Bonds**

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

## **AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES**

### **Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District**

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Burnet Central Appraisal District and Travis County Appraisal District (collectively the "Appraisal District") are responsible for appraising property within the District as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District is subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District's Board of Directors. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the District in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

### **Property Subject to Taxation by the District**

Except for certain exemptions provided by State law, all real and certain tangible personal property with a tax situs in the District is subject to taxation by the District. Principal categories of exempt property (including certain exemptions which are subject to local option by the District) include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if the property is used for public purposes; property exempt from ad valorem taxation by federal law; certain improvements to real property and certain tangible personal property located in designated reinvestment zones on which the District has agreed to abate ad valorem taxes, certain household goods, family supplies and personal effects; farm products owned by the producers; certain property of a nonprofit corporation used in scientific research and educational activities benefiting a college or university; and designated historic sites. Other principal categories of exempt property include tangible personal property not held or used for production of income; solar and windpowered energy devices; most individually owned automobiles; \$10,000 State mandated exemption to residential homesteads of persons ages 65 or over or disabled; a State mandated exemption up to a maximum of \$12,000 for real or personal property of disabled veterans or the surviving spouse or children of an individual who died while on active duty in the armed forces; a State mandated \$25,000 in market value exemption for all residential homesteads (see "Residential Homestead Exemptions" below); and certain classes of intangible property. The Tax Code provides that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries. In addition, except for increases attributable to certain improvements, the District is prohibited by State law from increasing the total ad valorem



tax on the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such residence qualified for an exemption based on the age or disability of the owner. The freeze on ad valorem taxes on the homesteads of persons 65 years of age or older and the disabled is also transferable to a different residence homestead. Also, a surviving spouse of a taxpayer who qualifies for the freeze on ad valorem taxes is entitled to the same exemption so long as (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was 55 or older when the deceased spouse died and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. Pursuant to a constitutional amendment approved by the voters on May 12, 2007, legislation was enacted to reduce the school property tax limitation imposed by the freeze on taxes paid on residence homesteads of persons 65 years of age or over or of disabled persons to correspond to reductions in local school district tax rates from the 2005 tax year to the 2006 tax year and from the 2006 tax year to the 2007 tax year (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Overview" herein). The school property tax limitation provided by the constitutional amendment and enabling legislation apply to the 2007 and subsequent tax years. Owners of agricultural and open space land, under certain circumstances, may request valuation of such land on the basis of productive capacity rather than market value. Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from ad valorem taxation for "freeport property," which is defined as goods detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication. Taxing units that took action prior to April 1, 1990 may continue to tax freeport property and decisions to continue to tax freeport property may be reversed in the future. However, decisions to exempt freeport property are not subject to reversal. Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for the exemption from taxation of "goods-in-transit." "Goods-in-transit," defined by the Tax Code as personal property acquired or imported into Texas and transported to another location in the State or outside of the State within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into Texas. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. The Tax Code provision permits local governmental entities, on a local option basis, to take official action by January 1 of the year preceding a tax year, after holding a public hearing, to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year. A taxpayer may receive only one of the freeport or goods-in-transit exemptions for tangible personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82<sup>nd</sup> Texas Legislature, 1<sup>st</sup> Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action after October 1 of the prior year but prior to January 1 of the first tax year in which the governing body proposes to tax goods-in-transit to continue its taxation of goods-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond. See "THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT" and "APPENDIX A – FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT - ASSESSED VALUATION" for a schedule of the amount of exemptions granted by the District.

A city or county may create a tax increment financing zone ("TIF") within the city or county with defined boundaries and establish a base value of taxable property in the TIF at the time of its creation. Overlapping taxing units, including school districts, may agree with the city or county to contribute all or part of future ad valorem taxes levied and collected against the "incremental value" (taxable value in excess of the base value) of taxable real property in the TIF to pay or finance the costs of certain public improvements in the TIF, and such taxes levied and collected for and on behalf of the TIF are not available for general use by such contributing taxing units. Prior to September 1, 2001, school districts were allowed to enter into tax abatement agreements to encourage economic development. Under such agreements, a property owner agrees to construct certain improvements on its property. The school district in turn agrees not to levy a tax on all or part of the increased value attributable to the improvements until the expiration of the agreement. The abatement agreement could last for a period of up to 10 years. Effective September 1, 2001, school districts may not enter into tax abatement agreements under the general statute that permits cities and counties to initiate tax abatement agreements. In addition, credit will not be given by the Commissioner of Education in determining a district's property value wealth per student for (1) the appraisal value, in excess of the "frozen" value, of property that is located in a TIF created after May 31, 1999 (except in certain limited circumstances where the city creating the TIF gave notice prior to May 31, 1999 to all other taxing units that levy ad valorem taxes in the TIF of its intention to create the TIF and the TIF was created and had its final project and financing plan approved by the municipality prior to August 31, 1999) or (2) for the loss of value of abated property under any abatement agreement entered into after May 31, 1993.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in 2001 the Legislature enacted legislation known as the Texas Economic Development Act, which provides incentives for certain school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values and provide ad valorem tax credits to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the district. Generally, during the last eight years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may only levy and collect ad valorem taxes for maintenance and operation purposes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. The taxpayer is entitled to a tax credit from the school district for the amount of taxes imposed during the first two years of the tax limitation agreement on the appraised value of the property above the agreed-to limited value. Additional State funding is provided to a school district for each year of such tax limitation in the amount of the tax credit provided to the taxpayer. During the first two years of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the district's rollback tax rate (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate").

### **Valuation of Property for Taxation**

Generally, property in the District must be appraised by the Appraisal District at market value as of January 1 of each year. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. Oil and gas reserves are assessed on the basis of pricing information contained in the most recently published Early Release Overview of the Annual Energy Outlook published by the United States Energy Information Administration, as well as appraisal formulas developed by the State Comptroller of Public Accounts. The valuation of assessment of oil and gas reserves depends upon pricing information in either the standard edition of the Annual Energy Outlook or, if the most recently published edition of the Annual Energy Outlook was published before December 1 of the preceding calendar year, the Short-Term Energy Outlook report published in January of the current calendar year. Once an appraisal roll is prepared and finally approved by the Appraisal Review Board, it is used by the District in establishing its tax rolls and tax rate. Assessments under the Tax Code are based on one hundred percent (100%) of market value, except as described below, and no assessment ratio can be applied.

State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount that would not exceed the lesser of (1) the property's market value in the most recent tax year in which the market value was determined by the appraisal district or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the property's appraised value in the preceding tax year, plus (b) the property's appraised value the preceding tax year, plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property.

Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and the Tax Code permit land designated for agricultural use (Section 1-d), open space or timberland (Section 1-d-1) to be appraised at its value based on the land's capacity to produce agricultural or timber products rather than at its fair market value. Landowners wishing to avail themselves of the agricultural use designation must apply for the

designation, and the appraiser is required by the Tax Code to act on each claimant's right to the designation individually. If a claimant receives the designation and later loses it by changing the use of the property or selling it to an unqualified owner, the District can collect taxes for previous years based on the new value, including three years for agricultural use and five years for agricultural open-space land and timberland prior to the loss of the designation. The same land may not be qualified under both Section 1-d and Section 1-d-1.

The Tax Code requires the Appraisal District to implement a plan for periodic reappraisal of property to update appraisal values. The plan must provide for appraisal of all real property in the Appraisal District at least once every three years. The District, at its expense, has the right to obtain from the Appraisal District current estimates of appraised values within the District or an estimate of any new property or improvements within the District. While such current estimates of appraisal values may serve to indicate the rate and extent of growth of taxable values within the District, it cannot be used for establishing a tax rate within the District until such time as the Appraisal District chooses to formally include such values on its appraisal rolls.

### **Residential Homestead Exemptions**

Under Section 1-b, Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision.

Once authorized, such exemption may be repealed or decreased or increased in amount (i) by the governing body of the political subdivision or (ii) by a favorable vote of a majority of the qualified voters at an election called by the governing body of the political subdivision, which election must be called upon receipt of a petition signed by at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the political subdivision. In the case of a decrease, the amount of the exemption may not be reduced to less than \$3,000 of the market value.

The surviving spouse of an individual who qualifies for the foregoing exemption for the residence homestead of a person 65 or older (but not the disabled) is entitled to an exemption for the same property in an amount equal to that of the exemption for which the deceased spouse qualified if (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age at the time of the death of the individual's spouse and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. On November 3, 2015, Texas voters approved an amendment to this law to provide for the exemption from ad valorem taxation for those surviving spouses of veterans who died before 2011, of which such amendment applies for the tax year beginning on or after January 1, 2016.

Section 11.131 of the Texas Tax Code states that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until the surviving spouse remarries.

A disabled veteran who has a disability rating of less than 100% is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability rating for a residence homestead that was donated by a charitable organization to such veteran (i) at no cost to such veteran or (ii) effective January 1, 2018, at some cost to such veteran in the form of a cash payment, a mortgage, or both in an aggregate amount that is not more than 50 percent of the good faith estimate of the market value of the residence homestead made by the charitable organization as of the date the donation is made.

Also, the surviving spouse of a member of the armed forces who is killed in action is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

The surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the first responder's death and said property was the first responder's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

In addition to any other exemptions provided by the Tax Code, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads, with a minimum exemption of \$5,000.

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created. Voters in the State approved a constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increasing the mandatory homestead exemption for school districts from \$15,000 to \$25,000, and requiring that the tax limitation for taxpayers who are age 65 and older or disabled be reduced to reflect the additional exemption.

The governing body of a political subdivision is prohibited from repealing or reducing the amount of an optional homestead exemption that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) during the period ending December 31, 2019.

### **District and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal orders of the Appraisal Review Board by filing a petition for review in district court within 45 days after notice is received that a final order has been entered. In such event, the property value in question may be determined by the court, or by a jury, if requested by any party, or through binding arbitration, if requested by the taxpayer. Additionally, taxing units may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Tax Code.

### **Levy and Collection of Taxes**

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. By the later of September 30<sup>th</sup> or 60 days after the certified appraisal roll is delivered to the District, the rate of taxation must be set by the Board based upon the valuation of property within the District as of the preceding January 1 and the amount required to be raised for debt service and maintenance and operations purposes. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty from six percent (6%) to twelve

percent (12%) of the amount of the tax, depending on the time of payment, and accrues interest at the rate of one percent (1%) per month. If the tax is not paid by the following July 1, an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) may under certain circumstances be imposed by the District. The Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances.

### **Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate**

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures and (2) a rate for debt service. The rollback tax rate for a school district is the lesser of (A) the sum of (1) the product of the district's "State Compression Percentage" for that year multiplied by \$1.50, (2) the rate of \$0.04, (3) any rate increase above the rollback tax rate in prior years that were approved by voters, and (4) the district's current debt rate, or (B) the sum of (1) the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate, (2) the product of the district's State Compression Percentage for that year multiplied by \$0.06; and (3) the district's current debt rate (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts" for a description of the "State Compression Percentage"). If for the preceding tax year a district adopted an M&O tax rate that was less than its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year, the district's rollback tax for the current year is calculated as if the district had adopted an M&O tax rate for the preceding tax year equal to its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year.

The "effective maintenance and operations tax rate" for a school district is the tax rate that, applied to the current tax values, would provide local maintenance and operating funds, when added to State funds to be distributed to the district pursuant to Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code for the school year beginning in the current tax year, in the same amount as would have been available to the district in the preceding year if the funding elements of wealth equalization and State funding for the current year had been in effect for the preceding year.

Section 26.05 of the Tax Code provides that the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d), and, if applicable, Subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A district may adopt its budget after adopting a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt its tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll. A district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

### **District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies**

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. The District has no lien for unpaid taxes on personal property but does have a lien for unpaid taxes upon real property, which lien is discharged upon payment. On January 1 of each year, such tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with the tax liens of other such taxing units. A tax lien on real property taxes takes priority over the claims of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien. The automatic stay in bankruptcy will prevent the automatic attachment of tax liens with respect to post-petition tax years unless relief is sought and granted by the bankruptcy judge. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

Except with respect to taxpayers who are 65 years of age or older, at any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, by the effects of market conditions on the foreclosure sale price, by taxpayer redemption rights, or by bankruptcy proceedings which restrict the collection of taxpayer debts. Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

## **THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT**

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in Burnet and Travis Counties, Texas (the "County"). The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within the County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District does not collect an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by Burnet Central Appraisal District and Travis Counties.

The District does not allow split payments of taxes on homesteads and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District does not grant tax abatements.

The District does not grant the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has not taken action to tax freeport property. The District has not taken action to continue to tax goods-in-transit.

Charges for penalties and interest on the unpaid balance of delinquent taxes are as follows:

| <u>Date</u> | <u>Penalty</u> | <u>Interest</u> | <u>Cumulative<br/>Total</u> |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| February    | 6%             | 1%              | 7%                          |
| March       | 7              | 2               | 9                           |
| April       | 8              | 3               | 11                          |
| May         | 9              | 4               | 13                          |
| June        | 10             | 5               | 15                          |
| July        | 12             | 6               | 18                          |

*After July, penalty remains at 12%, and interest accrues at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid. A delinquent tax continues to accrue interest as long as the tax remains unpaid, regardless of whether a judgment for the delinquent tax has been rendered. The purpose of imposing such interest is to compensate the taxing unit for revenue lost because of the delinquency. In addition, State law allows that, if an account is delinquent in July, an amount up to 20% attorney's collection fee may be added to the total tax penalty and interest charge.*

## STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

### Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

### Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was "undeniably imperfect". While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM".

## CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

### Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the Finance System as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 41 through 46 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Funding for school districts in the State is provided primarily from State and local sources. State funding for all school districts is provided through a set of funding formulas comprising the "Foundation School Program", as well as two facilities funding programs. Generally, the Finance System is designed to promote wealth equalization among school districts by balancing State and local sources of funds available to school districts. In particular, because districts with relatively high levels of property wealth per student can raise more local funding, such districts receive less State aid, and in some cases, are required to disburse local funds to equalize their overall funding relative to other school districts. Conversely, because districts with relatively low levels of property wealth per student have limited access to local funding, the Finance System is designed to provide more State funding to such districts. Thus, as a school district's property wealth per student increases, State funding to

the school district is reduced. As a school district's property wealth per student declines, the Finance System is designed to increase that district's State funding. The Finance System provides a similar equalization system for facilities funding wherein districts with the same tax rate for debt service raise the same amount of combined State and local funding. Facilities funding for debt incurred in prior years is expected to continue in future years; however, State funding for new school facilities has not been consistently appropriated by the Texas Legislature, as further described below.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a limited M&O tax to pay current expenses and an unlimited interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. Generally, under current law, M&O tax rates are subject to a statutory maximum rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value for most school districts (although a few districts can exceed the \$1.17 limit as a result of authorization approved in the 1960s). Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding indebtedness through the levy of an ad valorem tax at a rate of not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable property at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, districts may levy a tax to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein). As noted above, because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by the same tax rate is also subject to wide variation among school districts.

### **Local Funding for School Districts**

The primary source of local funding for school districts is collections from ad valorem taxes levied against taxable property located in each school district. Prior to reform legislation that became effective during the 2006-2007 fiscal year (the "Reform Legislation"), the maximum M&O tax rate for most school districts was generally limited to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. At the time the Reform Legislation was enacted, the majority of school districts were levying an M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. The Reform Legislation required each school district to "compress" its tax rate by an amount equal to the "State Compression Percentage". The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the State Compression Percentage has been set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts are permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate by up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate without voter approval (for most districts, up to \$1.04 per \$100 of taxable value). In addition, if the voters approve a tax rate increase through a local referendum, districts may, in general, increase their M&O tax rate up to a maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value and receive State equalization funds for such taxing effort (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate"). Elections authorizing the levy of M&O taxes held in certain school districts under older laws, however, may subject M&O tax rates in such districts to other limitations (See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein).

### **State Funding for School Districts**

State funding for school districts is provided through the Foundation School Program, which provides each school district with a minimum level of funding (a "Basic Allotment") for each student in average daily attendance ("ADA"). The Basic Allotment is calculated for each school district using various weights and adjustments based on the number of students in average daily attendance and also varies depending on each district's compressed tax rate. This Basic Allotment formula determines most of the allotments making up a district's basic level of funding, referred to as "Tier One" of the Foundation School Program. The basic level of funding is then "enriched" with additional funds known as "Tier Two" of the Foundation School Program. Tier Two provides a guaranteed level of funding for each cent of local tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates above \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value). The Finance System also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. In 2017, the 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,378,500,000 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the Texas Legislature. Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the Texas Legislature for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service on new bonds issued by districts to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

Tier One allotments are intended to provide all districts a basic level of education necessary to meet applicable legal standards. Tier Two allotments are intended to guarantee each school district that is not subject to the wealth transfer provisions described below an opportunity to supplement that basic program at a level of its own choice; however, Tier Two allotments may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

As described above, the cost of the basic program is based on an allotment per student known as the "Basic Allotment". For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the Basic Allotment is \$5,140 for each student in average daily attendance. The Basic Allotment is then adjusted for all districts by several different weights to account for inherent differences between school districts. These weights consist of (i) a cost adjustment factor intended to address varying economic conditions that affect teacher hiring known as the "cost of education index", (ii) district-size adjustments for small and mid-size districts, and (iii) an adjustment for the sparsity of the district's student population. The cost of education index, district-size and population sparsity adjustments, as applied to the Basic Allotment, create what is referred to as the "Adjusted Allotment". The Adjusted Allotment is used to compute a "regular program allotment", as well as various other allotments associated with educating students with other specified educational needs.

Tier Two supplements the basic funding of Tier One and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., guaranteed levels of funding by the State) depending on the district's local tax effort. The first six cents of tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.00 to \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value) will, for most districts, generate the a guaranteed yield of \$99.41 and \$106.28 per cent per weighted student in average daily attendance ("WADA") in the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years, respectively. The second level of Tier Two is generated by tax effort that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents (for most districts eligible for this level of funding, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.06 to \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value) and has a guaranteed yield per cent per WADA of \$31.95 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. Property-wealthy school districts that have an M&O tax rate that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents are subject to recapture above this tax rate level at the equivalent wealth per student of \$319,500 (see "Wealth Transfer Provisions" below).

Previously, a district with a compressed tax rate below \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value (known as a "fractionally funded district") received a Basic Allotment which was reduced proportionately to the degree that the district's compressed tax rate fell short of \$1.00. Beginning in the 2017-2018 fiscal year, the compressed tax rate of a fractionally funded district now includes the portion of such district's current M&O tax rate in excess of the first six cents above the district's compressed tax rate until the district's compressed tax rate is equal to the state maximum compressed tax rate of \$1.00. Thus, for fractionally funded districts, each eligible one cent of M&O tax levy above the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents will have a guaranteed yield based on Tier One funding instead of the Tier Two yield, thereby reducing the penalty against the Basic Allotment.

In addition to the operations funding components of the Foundation School Program discussed above, the Foundation School Program provides a facilities funding component consisting of the Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) program and the Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) program. These programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Guaranteed Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of tax effort to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The guaranteed yield per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where the State Legislature allocates appropriated funds for new IFA awards, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the Commissioner before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA state assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. The 85th State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded. State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") was the same as the IFA Guaranteed Yield (\$35 per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA). The 85th Texas Legislature changed the EDA Yield to the lesser of (i) \$40 or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The yield for the 2017-2018 fiscal year is approximately \$37. The portion of a district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first 29 cents of debt service tax (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the Texas Legislature). In general, a district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the district receives IFA funding.

A district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. The 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$23,750,000 for each of the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years for NIFA allotments.

## **2006 Legislation**

Since the enactment of the Reform Legislation in 2006, most school districts in the State have operated with a "target" funding level per student ("Target Revenue") that is based upon the "hold harmless" principles embodied in the Reform Legislation. This system of Target Revenue was superimposed on the Foundation School Program and made existing funding formulas substantially less important for most school districts. The Reform Legislation was intended to lower M&O tax rates in order to give school districts "meaningful discretion" in setting their M&O tax rates, while holding school districts harmless by providing them with the same level of overall funding they received prior to the enactment of the Reform Legislation. To make up for this shortfall, the Reform Legislation authorized Additional State Aid for Tax Reduction ("ASATR") for each school district in an amount equal to the difference between the amount that each district would receive under the Foundation School Program and the amount of each district's Target Revenue funding level. However, in subsequent legislative sessions, the Texas Legislature has gradually reduced the reliance on ASATR by increasing the funding formulas, and beginning with the 2017-18 school year, the statutes authorizing ASATR are repealed (eliminating revenue targets and ASATR funding).

## **2017 Legislation**

The 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, including the regular session which concluded on May 29, 2017 and the special session which concluded on August 15, 2017, did not enact substantive changes to the Finance System. However, certain bills during the regular session and House Bill 21, which was passed during the special session and signed by the Governor on August 16, 2017, revised certain aspects of the formulas used to determine school district entitlements under the Finance System. In addition to amounts previously discussed, the 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature additionally appropriated funds to (i) establish a Financial Hardship Transition Program, which provides grants ("Hardship Grants") to those districts which were heavily reliant on ASATR funding, and (ii) provide an Adjustment for Rapid Decline in Taxable Value of Property ("DPV Decline Adjustment") for districts which experienced a decline in their tax base of more than four percent for tax years 2015 and 2016. A district may receive either a Hardship Grant or a DPV Decline Adjustment, but cannot receive both. In a case where a district would have been eligible to receive funding under both programs, the district will receive the greater of the two amounts.

## **2019 Legislative Session**

On January 8, 2019, the 86th Texas Legislature will convene in general session, scheduled to adjourn on May 27, 2019. Thereafter, the Texas Governor may call one or more additional special sessions. During this time, the Texas Legislature may enact laws that materially change current law as it relates to Texas school finance. The District makes no representation regarding any actions the Texas Legislature may take, but intends to monitor proposed legislation for any developments applicable to the District.

## **Wealth Transfer Provisions**

Some districts have sufficient property wealth per student in WADA ("wealth per student") to generate their statutory level of funding through collections of local property taxes alone. Districts whose wealth per student generates local property tax collections in excess of their statutory level of funding are referred to as "Chapter 41" districts because they are subject to the wealth equalization provisions contained in Chapter 41 of the Texas Education Code. Chapter 41 districts may receive State funds for certain competitive grants and a few programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program. Otherwise,

Chapter 41 districts are not eligible to receive State funding. Furthermore, Chapter 41 districts must exercise certain measures in order to reduce their wealth level to equalized wealth levels of funding, as determined by formulas set forth in the Reform Legislation. For most Chapter 41 districts, this equalization process entails paying the portion of the district's local taxes collected in excess of the equalized wealth levels of funding to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or directly to other school districts with a wealth per student that does not generate local funds sufficient to meet the statutory level of funding, a process known as "recapture".

The equalized wealth levels that subject Chapter 41 districts to recapture for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium are set at (i) \$514,000 per student in WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that does not exceed its compressed tax rate (for most districts, the first \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value) and (ii) \$319,500 per WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that is beyond its compressed rate plus \$.06 (for most districts, M&O taxes levied above \$1.06 per \$100 in taxable value). So long as the State's equalization program under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code is funded to provide tax revenue equivalent to that raised by the Austin Independent School District on the first six pennies of tax effort that exceed the compressed tax rate, then M&O taxes levied above \$1.00 but at or below \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value ("Golden Pennies") are not subject to the wealth equalization provisions of Chapter 41. Because funding at the Austin Independent School District level is currently being provided to school districts under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, no recapture is currently associated with the Golden Pennies. Chapter 41 districts with a wealth per student above the lower equalized wealth level but below the higher equalized wealth level must equalize their wealth only with respect to the portion of their M&O tax rate, if any, in excess of \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value. Under Chapter 41, a district has five options to reduce its wealth per student so that it does not exceed the equalized wealth levels: (1) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated district; all property and debt of the consolidating districts vest in the consolidated district; (2) a district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor district; (3) a district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor districts; or (5) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated taxing district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 41 district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (5) require prior approval by the Chapter 41 district's voters.

A district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective wealth per student is at or below the equalized wealth level. If a district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the district's property wealth per student to the equalized wealth level by detaching certain types of property from the district and annexing the property to a property-poor district or, if necessary, consolidate the district with a property-poor district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring district's existing debt. The Commissioner has not been required to detach property in the absence of a district failing to select another wealth-equalization option.

#### **THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

The District's wealth per student for the 2018-19 school year is greater than the equalized wealth value. Pursuant to Chapter 41, Texas Education Code, the Commissioner has notified the District that its wealth per student exceeds the equalized wealth level set by law. Accordingly, the District has entered into one or more wealth equalization agreements with the Commissioner and/or other school districts for the purpose of implementing permitted wealth equalization options.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, must be reduced by exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted level in future school years, it will be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

#### **THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM**

*The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser.*

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

#### **History and Purpose**

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF

had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). As of August 31, 2017, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 21% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2018, preliminary, unaudited distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$246.92 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,235.8 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, as filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2017 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2017 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2017, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2017 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2017 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/) and with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at [www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml](http://www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml). A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

### **The Total Return Constitutional Amendment**

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009)



("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2018, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 40.54% in public market equity investments; 13.25% in fixed income investments; 10.37% in absolute return assets; 9.12% in private equity assets; 7.48% in real estate assets; 6.79% in risk parity assets; 5.96% in real return assets; 6.21% in emerging market debt; and 0.28% in unallocated cash. August 31, 2018 data is unaudited, which is subject to adjustment.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual payout from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, changes in international trade policies, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

### **Management and Administration of the Fund**

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the three-member SLB, which consists of the elected Commissioner of the GLO, an appointee of the Governor, and an appointee of the Attorney General. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

### **Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program**

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then

outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017 and increased again to 3.75 times effective September 1, 2017; however, as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the SBOE took action at its Winter 2018 meeting to rollback of a portion of the multiplier increase, which became effective in late March 2018. Based upon the unaudited cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2018, the State Law Capacity increased from \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017 to \$118,867,137,998 on August 31, 2018 (but at such date the IRS Limit was lower, \$117,318,653,038, so it is the currently effective capacity limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/), which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF, among other factors, could adversely affect the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

### **The School District Bond Guarantee Program**

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a

school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

### **The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 21, 2018 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.5%. As of November 5, 2018, there were 177 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 754 charter school campuses operating under such charters. Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess

of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBG Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBG Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

Beginning in July 2015, TEA began limiting new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to the Act and, subsequently, with CDBG Rules that require the maintenance of a capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Following the increase in the Program multiplier in February 2016 and the update of the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census in March 2016, some new capacity became available under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but that capacity was quickly exhausted. In accordance with the action of the SBOE on February 3, 2017, additional capacity for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective in two increments, implemented on March 1, 2017 and on September 1, 2017 (as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," an item to reverse the September 1, 2017 increase in the Program multiplier was approved by the SBOE at its Winter 2018 meeting). In addition, legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modifies the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBG Capacity"), which further increases the amount of the CDBG Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBG Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBG Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

### **2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The CDBG Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBG Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBG Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of September 30, 2018, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 68.04% of the IRS Limit (which is currently the applicable capacity limit) for the Guarantee Program (based on unaudited data). SB 1480 amended the CDBG Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBG Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBG Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBG Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.50% in September 2018, representing a cumulative growth during that period of 55.81%. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBG Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBG Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBG Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBG expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBG Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBG Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE approved the second of two required readings amending the SDBG Rules to rollback the multiplier from 3.75 times market value to 3.50 times, and the rollback became effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBG Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBG Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of September 30, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.50% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

### **Charter District Risk Factors**

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At September 30, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$7,164,188.

## Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

The TEA, members of the Legislature and the Governor, among others, have stated that they are developing programs to provide financial assistance to affected school districts and charter districts, particularly with regard to funding assistance for facility repairs and construction and to offset tax base and/or revenue loss to affected districts. The composition of any final programs that may be implemented cannot be predicted, and are likely to be subject to future State legislative and administrative actions, available amounts of federal and private disaster relief for affected schools, and other factors. For fiscal year 2018, TEA initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State's general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

## Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATING" herein.

## Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

### Permanent School Fund Valuations

| Fiscal Year<br>Ended 8/31 | Book Value <sup>(1)</sup> | Market Value <sup>(1)</sup> |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2014                      | \$27,596,692,541          | \$38,445,519,225            |
| 2015                      | 29,081,052,900            | 36,196,265,273              |
| 2016                      | 30,128,037,903            | 37,279,799,335              |
| 2017                      | 31,870,581,428            | 41,438,672,573              |
| 2018 <sup>(2)</sup>       | 33,962,040,017            | 43,918,273,565              |

<sup>(1)</sup> SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2018, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.43 million, \$240.90 million, \$3,082.83 million, \$7.58 million, and \$4,247.36 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$1,870.22 million, \$642.00 million, \$3,164.04 million, \$4.71 million, and \$4,247.36 million, respectively. At September 30, 2018, the PSF had a book value of \$33,937,270,391 and a market value of \$43,724,325,619. August 31, 2018 and September 30, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

### Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

| At 8/31 | Principal Amount <sup>(1)</sup> |
|---------|---------------------------------|
| 2014    | \$58,364,350,783                |
| 2015    | 63,955,449,047                  |
| 2016    | 68,303,328,445                  |
| 2017    | 74,266,090,023                  |
| 2018    | 79,080,901,069 <sup>(2)</sup>   |

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> As of August 31, 2018 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$123,361,625,817, of which \$44,280,724,748 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2018, there were \$79,080,901,069 in



principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, and using the IRS Limit at that date of \$117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity), 98.21% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 1.79% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. August 31, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

| <b>Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category<sup>(1)</sup></b> |                              |                            |                               |                            |                         |                            |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
|   | <u>School District Bonds</u> |                            | <u>Charter District Bonds</u> |                            | <u>Totals</u>           |                            |
| Fiscal<br>Year<br>Ended<br>8/31   | No. of<br><u>Issues</u>      | Principal<br><u>Amount</u> | No. of<br><u>Issues</u>       | Principal<br><u>Amount</u> | No. of<br><u>Issues</u> | Principal<br><u>Amount</u> |
| 2014 <sup>(2)</sup>   | 2,869                        | \$58,061,805,783           | 10                            | \$302,545,000              | 2,879                   | \$58,364,350,783           |
| 2015  | 3,089                        | 63,197,514,047             | 28                            | 757,935,000                | 3,117                   | 63,955,449,047             |
| 2016  | 3,244                        | 67,342,303,445             | 35                            | 961,025,000                | 3,279                   | 68,303,328,445             |
| 2017  | 3,253                        | 72,884,480,023             | 40                            | 1,381,610,000              | 3,293                   | 74,266,090,023             |
| 2018  | 3,249                        | 77,647,966,069             | 44                            | 1,432,935,000              | 3,293                   | 79,080,901,069             |

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

<sup>(3)</sup> At September 30, 2018 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$79,828,771,069 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,265 school district issues, aggregating \$78,395,836,069 in principal amount and 45 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,432,935,000 in principal amount. At September 30, 2018, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$3,109,688,908 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment). 2018 data is unaudited, which is subject to adjustment.

### Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein, and will be updated upon the release of the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2017, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2017, the Fund balance was \$41.4 billion, an increase of \$4.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2017, were 11.96%, 8.26% and 5.49%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, three-year, and five-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 10.35%, 7.19%, and 7.77%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2017, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2017, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$3.31 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$3.83 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2017, totaled \$1.35 billion in real estate investments and \$1.54 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2017, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.042 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 16.30%, 12.80%, 19.04%, and 26.28%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of 1.61% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 7.32%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 10.52% and 16.35%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 8.77%, while real return assets yielded 2.38%. Emerging market debt produced a return of 11.84%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of



11.96% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, out-performing the benchmark index of 10.66% by approximately 130 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 10.35% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017.

For fiscal year 2017, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$5.4 billion, an increase of \$2.7 billion from fiscal year 2016 earnings of \$2.7 billion. This increase reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2017. In fiscal year 2017, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, increased 30.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. This increase is primarily attributable to an increase in PSF(SLB) operational costs and generally larger quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2016 and 2017, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.06 billion and \$1.06 billion, respectively. There was no contribution to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2017.

At the end of the 2017 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$74.27 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 6,980 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$166.3 billion in principal amount. During the 2017 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program increased by 14, or 0.4%. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$6.0 billion or 8.7%. The guarantee capacity of the Fund increased by \$13.9 billion, or 13.9%, during fiscal year 2017 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund and the increase in the cost multiplier (from 3.25 to 3.50, as discussed above) used to calculate Program capacity.

### **2011 Constitutional Amendment**

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3%, 3.5% and 3.7% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015, 2016-2017 and 2018-2019, respectively. In November 2018, the SBOE approved a \$2.2 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2020-2021, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$92.2 million, which represents a 2.981% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$220.97, based on 2018 preliminary student average daily attendance of 5,004,998. In making the 2020-2021 biennium distribution decision, the SBOE took into account a commitment of the SLB transfer \$10 to the PSF in fiscal year 2020 and \$45 million in fiscal year 2021.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

### **Other Events and Disclosures**

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without

compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

Since 2007, TEA has made supplemental appropriation requests to the Legislature for the purpose of funding the implementation of the 2008 Asset Allocation Policy, but those requests have been denied or partly funded. In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2017, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

### **PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking**

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund\\_Disclosure\\_Statement\\_-\\_Bond\\_Guarantee\\_Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on November 16, 2018, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org), and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

### **Annual Reports**

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

### **Event Notices**

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in

any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

### **Availability of Information**

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

### **SEC Exemptive Relief**

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

### **TAX RATE LIMITATIONS**

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operations ("M&O") taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the succeeding paragraphs. The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on March 1, 1966, pursuant to Article 2784e-1, Texas Revised Civil Statutes Annotated, as amended ("Article 2784e-1").

Article 2784e-1 limits the District's annual M&O tax rate based upon a comparison between the District's outstanding bonded indebtedness and the District's taxable assessed value per \$100 of assessed valuation. Article 2784e-1 provides for a reduction of \$0.10 for each one percent (1%) or major fraction thereof increase in bonded indebtedness beyond seven percent (7%) of assessed valuation of property in the District. This limitation is capped when the District's bonded indebtedness is ten percent (10%) (or greater) of the District's assessed valuation which would result in an annual M&O tax rate not to exceed \$1.20. Lastly, the Texas Attorney General in reviewing the District's transcript of proceedings will allow the District to reduce the amount of its outstanding bonded indebtedness by the amount of funds (on a percentage basis) that the District receives in State assistance for the repayment of this bonded indebtedness (for example, if the District anticipates that it will pay 75% of its bonded indebtedness from State assistance, for the purposes of Article 2784e-1, the Texas Attorney General will assume that only 25%

of the District's bonded indebtedness is outstanding and payable from local ad valorem taxes). The bonded indebtedness of the District after the issuance of the Bonds will be approximately 2.40% of the District's current taxable assessed valuation of property. See "APPENDIX A – VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT – Ratio of Net General Obligation Debt to Net Taxable Valuation" herein.

The maximum M&O tax rate per \$100 of assessed valuation that may be adopted by the District may not exceed the lesser of (A) \$1.50, or such lower rate as described in the preceding paragraph, and (B) the sum of (1) the rate of \$0.17, and (2) the product of the "State Compression Percentage" multiplied by \$1.50.

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS – Security").

Section 45.0031, Texas Education Code, as amended ("Section 45.0031"), requires a district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by district voters at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued. In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the district, which effectively reduces the district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the district. The District is required to deposit any State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service into the District's interest and sinking fund upon receipt of such amounts. In addition, the District must, prior to levying an interest and sinking fund tax rate that exceeds \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation, credit to the interest and sinking fund other State assistance, including Tier One funds that may be used for either operating purposes or for payment of debt service, in an amount equal to the amount needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Taxes levied to pay refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the \$0.50 tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test when applied to subsequent bond issues that are subject to the tax rate test. The Bonds are issued as "new money" bonds are subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. Under current law, a district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a district uses projected future taxable values to meet the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. The District has not used projected property values or State assistance to satisfy this threshold test.

#### **DEBT LIMITATIONS**

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay new debt secured by the district's debt service tax from a tax rate of \$0.50, and to pay all debt and operating expenses which must be paid from receipts of the district's maintenance tax from a tax not to exceed the maintenance tax limit described under the caption "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS." In demonstrating compliance with the requirement, a district may take into account State equalization payments, and, effective September 1, 1997, if compliance with such requirement is contingent on receiving State assistance, a district may not adopt a tax rate for a year for purposes of paying the principal of and interest on the bonds unless the district credits to the interest and sinking fund of the bond the amount of State assistance received or to be received in that year. The Texas Attorney General reviews a district's calculations showing the compliance with such test as a condition to the legal approval of the debt. The Bonds are "new debt" and are therefore subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. See also "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS".

#### **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS**

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan (the "Plan") with the State of Texas. The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). State contributions are made to cover costs of the TRS retirement plan up to certain statutory limits. The District is obligated for a portion of TRS costs relating to employee salaries that exceed the statutory limit. Aside from the District's contribution to TRS, the District has no pension fund expenditures or liabilities. For fiscal year ended June 30, 2018, the District made a contribution to TRS on a portion of their employee's salaries that exceeded the statutory minimum. The District generally does not offer any post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45. For a discussion of the TRS retirement plan, see "Note J. Pension Plan" to the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

As a result of its participation in the Plan and the TRS-Care Retired Plan and having no other post-retirement benefit plans, the District has no obligations for other post-employment benefits within the meaning of Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") Statement 45.

During the year ended June 30, 2018, employees of the District were covered by a fully-insured health insurance plan (the "Health Care Plan"). The District contributed \$200 per month per employee to the Health Care Plan. Employees, at their option, authorize payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. See "Note K. Defined Other Post Employment Benefit Plans – Employee Health Care Coverage" of the Financial Statements.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

## **RATING**

The Bonds are expected to be rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency (see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein). The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "AA-" by S&P.

An explanation of the significance of such rating may be obtained from S&P. The rating of the Bonds by S&P reflects only the view of said company at the time the rating is given, and the District makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that the rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by S&P, if, in the judgment of S&P, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

The above rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold the Bonds, and such rating may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time by S&P. Any downward revision or withdrawal of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

## **LEGAL MATTERS**

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of Texas to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and the approving legal opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Austin, Texas, Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to like effect and to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C. The legal fee to be paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

In its capacity as Bond Counsel, Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, has not independently verified any of the factual information contained in this Official Statement nor have they conducted an investigation into the affairs of the District for the purpose of passing upon the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Bond Counsel's role in connection with this Official Statement was limited to reviewing the information describing the Bonds in the Official Statement to verify that such descriptions conform to the provisions of the Order. No person is entitled to rely upon such firm's limited participation as an assumption of responsibility for, or an expression of opinion of any kind, with regard to the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

## **TAX MATTERS**

In the opinion of Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP, Bond Counsel ("Bond Counsel"), based upon an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions, and assuming, among other matters, the accuracy of certain representations and compliance with certain covenants, interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). Bond Counsel is of the further opinion that interest on the Bonds is not a specific preference item for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. A complete copy of the proposed form of opinion of Bond Counsel is set forth in Appendix C hereto.

To the extent the issue price of any maturity of the Bonds is less than the amount to be paid at maturity of such Bonds (excluding amounts stated to be interest and payable at least annually over the term of such Bonds), the difference constitutes "original issue discount," the accrual of which, to the extent properly allocable to each Beneficial Owner thereof, is treated as interest on the Bonds which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. For this purpose, the issue price of a particular maturity of the Bonds is the first price at which a substantial amount of such maturity of the Bonds is sold to the public (excluding bond houses, brokers, or similar persons or organizations acting in the capacity of underwriters, placement agents or wholesalers). The original issue discount with respect to any maturity of the Bonds accrues daily over the term to maturity of such Bonds on the basis of a constant interest rate compounded semiannually (with straight-line interpolations between compounding dates). The accruing original issue discount is added to the adjusted basis of such Bonds to determine taxable gain or loss upon disposition (including sale, redemption, or payment on maturity) of such Bonds. Beneficial Owners of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the tax consequences of ownership of Bonds with original issue discount, including the treatment of Beneficial Owners who do not purchase such Bonds in the original offering to the public at the first price at which a substantial amount of such Bonds is sold to the public.

Bonds purchased, whether at original issuance or otherwise, for an amount higher than their principal amount payable at maturity (or, in some cases, at their earlier call date) ("Premium Bonds") will be treated as having amortizable bond premium. No deduction is allowable for the amortizable bond premium in the case of obligations, like the Premium Bonds, the interest on which is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. However, the amount of tax-exempt interest received, and a Beneficial Owner's basis in a Premium Bond, will be reduced by the amount of amortizable bond premium properly allocable to such Beneficial Owner. Beneficial Owners of Premium Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the proper treatment of amortizable bond premium in their particular circumstances.

The Code imposes various restrictions, conditions and requirements relating to the exclusion from gross income for federal income tax purposes of interest on obligations such as the Bonds. The District has made certain representations and covenanted to comply with certain restrictions, conditions and requirements designed to ensure that interest on the Bonds will not be included in federal gross income. Inaccuracy of these representations or failure to comply with these covenants may result in interest on the Bonds being included in gross income for federal income tax purposes, possibly from the date of original issuance of the Bonds. The opinion of Bond Counsel assumes the accuracy of these representations and compliance with these covenants. Bond Counsel has not undertaken to determine (or to inform any person) whether any actions taken (or not taken), or events occurring (or not occurring), or any other matters coming to Bond Counsel's attention after the date of issuance of the Bonds may adversely affect the value of, or the tax status of interest on, the Bonds. Accordingly, the opinion of Bond Counsel is not intended to, and may not, be relied upon in connection with any such actions, events or matters.

Although Bond Counsel is of the opinion that interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the ownership or disposition of, or the accrual or receipt of amounts treated as interest on, the Bonds may otherwise affect a Beneficial Owner's federal, state or local tax liability. The nature and extent of these other tax consequences depends upon the particular tax status of the Beneficial Owner or the Beneficial Owner's other items of income or deduction. Bond Counsel expresses no opinion regarding any such other tax consequences.

Current and future legislative proposals, if enacted into law, clarification of the Code or court decisions may cause interest on the Bonds to be subject, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to federal income taxation or otherwise prevent Beneficial Owners from realizing the full current benefit of the tax status of such interest. The introduction or enactment of any such legislature proposals or clarification of the Code or court decisions may also affect, perhaps significantly, the market price for, or marketability of, the Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors regarding the potential impact of any pending or proposed federal or state tax legislation, regulations or litigation, as to which Bond Counsel is expected to express no opinion.

The opinion of Bond Counsel is based on current legal authority, covers certain matters not directly addressed by such authorities, and represents Bond Counsel's judgment as to the proper treatment of the Bonds for federal income tax purposes. It is not binding on the Internal Revenue Service ("IRS") or the courts. Furthermore, Bond Counsel cannot give and has not given any opinion or assurance about the future activities of the District or about the effect of future changes in the Code, the applicable regulations, the interpretation thereof or the enforcement thereof by the IRS. The District has covenanted, however, to comply with the requirements of the Code.

Bond Counsel's engagement with respect to the Bonds ends with the issuance of the Bonds, and, unless separately engaged, Bond Counsel is not obligated to defend the District or the Beneficial Owners regarding the tax-exempt status of the Bonds in the event of an audit examination by the IRS. Under current procedures, parties other than the District and its appointed counsel, including the Beneficial Owners, would have little, if any, right to participate in the audit examination process. Moreover, because achieving judicial review in connection with an audit examination of tax-exempt bonds is difficult, obtaining an independent review of IRS positions with which the District legitimately disagrees, may not be practicable. Any action of the IRS, including but not limited to selection of the Bonds for audit, or the course or result of such audit, or an audit of bonds presenting similar tax issues may affect the market price for, or the marketability of, the Bonds, and may cause the District or the Beneficial Owners to incur significant expense.

## **INVESTMENT POLICIES**

### **Legal Investments**

Under Texas law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including letters of credit; (2) direct obligations of the State of Texas or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal and interest of which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State of Texas or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "A" or its equivalent; (6) bonds issued, assumed, or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors, or otherwise meeting the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act; (8) certificates of deposit and share certificates that (i) are issued by or through an institution that has its main office or a branch in Texas and (a) are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors, (b) are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (7) above, or (c) secured in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits, or (ii) certificates of deposit where (a) the funds are invested by the District through a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas and is selected from a list adopted by the District as required by law, or a depository institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas that is selected by the District; (b) the broker or the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of the funds in certificates of deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District; (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (d) the District appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, an entity as described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission and operating pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3 as custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit issued for the account of the District; (9) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that (i) have a defined termination date, (ii) are fully secured by a combination of cash and obligations described in clause (1), (iii) require the securities being purchased by the District or cash held by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and (iv) are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State; (10) securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time, and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (7) above, (b) irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than "A" or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (7) above and clauses (12) through (15) below, (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or a third party designated by the District, (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary -35- government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State of Texas, and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less; (11) certain bankers' acceptances if the bankers' acceptance (i) has a stated maturity of 270 days or fewer from the date of issuance, (ii) will be, in accordance with its terms, liquidated in full at maturity, (iii) is eligible for collateral for borrowing from a Federal Reserve Bank, and (iv) is accepted by a State or Federal bank, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its holding company (if the accepting bank is the largest subsidiary) are rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (12) commercial paper with (i) a stated maturity of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, and (ii) a rating of at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by either (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank; (13) no-load money market mutual funds that are (i) registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, (ii) provide the District with a prospectus and other information required by the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934; and (iii) comply with Federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7; (14) no-load mutual funds that are (i) registered with the United States

Securities and Exchange Commission, (ii) have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and (iii) either (a) have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph, or (b) have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities; (15) investment pools if the District has authorized investment in the particular pool and the pool invests solely in investments permitted by the Texas Public Funds Investment Act, and is continuously rated no lower than "AAA" or "AAA-m" or at an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and (16) guaranteed investment contracts that (i) have a defined termination date, (ii) are secured by obligations which meet the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act in an amount at least equal to the amount of bond proceeds invested under such contract, and (iii) are pledged to the District and deposited with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District.

### **Current Investments**

As of September 30, 2018, the District had approximately \$10,402,158 (unaudited) invested in Lone Star Investment Pool (a government investment pool that generally has the characteristics of a money-market mutual fund) and \$1,882,089 (unaudited) at a local bank. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities, i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

### **REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE**

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The District agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the District shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

### **FINANCIAL ADVISOR**

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of its limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

### **LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS**

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATING" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

### **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION**

In the Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). For a description of the continuing disclosure obligations of the TEA, see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the Electronic Municipal Markets Access ("EMMA") system at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Annual Reports**

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in Appendix A (such information being the "Annual Operating Report"). The District will additionally provide financial

statements of the District (the "Financial Statements"), that will be (i) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix D or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation and shall be in substantially the form included in Appendix D and (ii) audited, if the District commissions an audit of such Financial Statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. The District will update and provide the Annual Operating Report within six months after the end of each fiscal year and the Financial Statements within six months of the end of each fiscal year, in each case beginning with the fiscal year ending in and after 2019. The District may provide the Financial Statements earlier, including at the time it provides its Annual Operating Report, but if the audit of such Financial Statements is not complete within six months after any such fiscal year end, then the District shall file unaudited Financial Statements within such six-month period and audited Financial Statements for the applicable fiscal year, when and if the audit report on such Financial Statements becomes available.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by SEC Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule").

The District's current fiscal year end is June 30. Accordingly, the Annual Operating Report must be provided by the last day of December in each year, and the Financial Statements must be provided by the last day of June of each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

### **Notice of Certain Events**

The District will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. The District will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional paying agent/registrar or the change of name of a paying agent/registrar, if material. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports". Neither the Bonds nor the Order make any provision for debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) of in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District.

### **Availability of Information**

All information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines by and through EMMA. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB through EMMA at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

With respect to debt of the District issued prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the District remains obligated to make annual required filings, as well as notices of certain events, under its continuing disclosure obligations relating to those debt obligations (which includes a continuing obligation to make such filings with the Texas state information depository (the "SID")). Prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas (the "MAC") had been designated by the State and approved by the SEC staff as a qualified SID. Subsequent to the EMMA Effective Date, the MAC entered into a Subscription Agreement with the MSRB pursuant to which the MSRB makes available to the MAC, in electronic format, all Texas-issuer continuing disclosure documents and related information posted to EMMA's website simultaneously with such posting. Until the District receives notice of a change in this contractual agreement between the MAC and EMMA or of a failure of either party to perform as specified thereunder, the District has determined, in reliance on guidance from the MAC, that making its continuing disclosure filings solely with the MSRB will satisfy its obligations to make filings with the SID pursuant to its continuing disclosure agreements entered into prior to the EMMA Effective Date.

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that has been provided except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement. Nothing in this paragraph is intended or shall act to disclaim, waive or limit the District's duties under federal or state securities laws.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if, but only if, (1) the agreement, as so amended, would have permitted underwriters to purchase or sell Bonds in the initial primary offering in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any qualified person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment



will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the District amends its agreement, it has agreed to include with the financial information and operating data next provided, in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and operating data so provided.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule. However, in connection with certain rating actions taken on April 23, 2010, and on November 30, 2011, the District filed an event notice with the MSRB on June 30, 2014.

### **LITIGATION**

In the opinion of District officials, except as may be described in this Official Statement, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Purchaser with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale, or delivery of the Bonds.

### **FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

### **WINNING BIDDER**

After requesting competitive bids for the Bonds, the District accepted the bid of \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Purchaser") to purchase the Bonds at the interest rates shown on page ii of this Official Statement at a price of par, plus a cash premium of \$ \_\_\_\_\_, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from their Dated Date to their date of initial delivery. The District can give no assurance that any trading market will be developed for the Bonds after their sale by the District to the Purchaser. The District has no control over the price at which the Bonds are subsequently sold and the initial yield at which the Bonds will be priced and reoffered will be established by and will be the responsibility of the Purchaser.

### **CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Initial Bonds, the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by a proper official of the District, acting in his or her official capacities, to the effect that to the best of his or her knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the District contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the District and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the District, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the District believes to be reliable and the District has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the District, since June 30, 2018, the date of the last financial statements of the District appearing in the Official Statement.

### **CONCLUDING STATEMENT**

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. Reference is made to official documents in all respects. All information contained in this Official Statement is subject, in all respects, to the complete body of information contained in the original sources thereof. In particular, no opinion or representation is rendered as to whether any projection will approximate actual results, and all opinions, estimates and assumption, whether or not expressly identified as such, should not be considered statements of fact.

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

The Order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds will also approve the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorize its further use in the re-offering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

This Official Statement will be approved by the Board for distribution in accordance with the provisions of the SEC's rule codified at 17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c2-12, as amended.

/s/

---

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

/s/

---

Secretary, Board of Trustees

**APPENDIX A**

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT**

# MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## Financial Information

### ASSESSED VALUATION <sup>(1)</sup>

|  |                         |                  |
|--|-------------------------|------------------|
| 2018/19 Total Valuation.....                     |                         | \$ 5,595,341,679 |
| Less Exemptions & Deductions <sup>(2)</sup> :    |                         |                  |
| State Homestead Exemption                        | \$ 156,260,900          |                  |
| Over-65 Exemption                                | 33,639,430              |                  |
| Disabled Exemption                               | 23,890,632              |                  |
| Local Optional Over-65 Exemption                 | 9,169,027               |                  |
| Veterans Exemption                               | 2,690,001               |                  |
| Freeport Exemptions                              | 12,176,845              |                  |
| Pollution Control Exemption                      | 939,509                 |                  |
| Solar / Wind Exemption Loss                      | 198,738                 |                  |
| Member Armed Services Surviving Spouse Exemption | 237,786                 |                  |
| Productivity Loss                                | 1,061,351,429           |                  |
| Homestead Cap Loss                               | 105,563,818             |                  |
|  | <u>\$ 1,406,118,115</u> |                  |
| 2018/19 Net Taxable Valuation .....              |                         | \$ 4,189,223,564 |

(1) Source: Certified Values from the Burnet and Travis Central Appraisal Districts as of August 2018. The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES -- Residential homestead Exemptions" in the Official Statement.  
(2) Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers which totaled \$215,585,131 in 2017/18.

### VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding  | \$ 55,065,000      |
| Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>   | <u>55,000,000</u>  |
| Total Unlimited Tax Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>                                   | 110,065,000        |
| Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of June 30, 2018) <sup>(2)</sup> | <u>(9,348,245)</u> |
| Net General Obligation Debt  | \$ 100,716,755     |
| Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(3)</sup>             | 2.40%              |
| 2019 Population Estimate <sup>(4)</sup>                                    | 25,706             |
| Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation   | \$162,967          |
| Per Capita Net G.O. Debt   | \$3,918            |

(1) Preliminary, subject to change.  
(2) Source: Marble Falls ISD Audited Ending I&S Fund Balance.  
(3) The ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation above, does not reflect the portion of the District's outstanding debt service that is payable from any debt subsidies that may be provided by the State of Texas. The District does not expect to receive state funding assistance for voted bond debt service for the 2018/19 fiscal year. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement and "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2018" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's outstanding obligations.  
(4) Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

### PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS

| Fiscal Year | Net Taxable                     |                          | Tax Rate | % Collections <sup>(4)</sup> |                        |
|-------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|----------|------------------------------|------------------------|
|             | Valuation                       |                          |          | Current <sup>(5)</sup>       | Total <sup>(5)</sup>   |
| 2006/07     | \$ 2,101,127,430 <sup>(1)</sup> | \$ 1.4716 <sup>(6)</sup> |          | 97.72%                       | 100.31%                |
| 2007/08     | 2,357,582,531 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2350 <sup>(6)</sup>    |          | 98.12%                       | 100.56%                |
| 2008/09     | 2,781,973,466 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2550                   |          | 97.15%                       | 98.54%                 |
| 2009/10     | 2,985,617,725 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2850                   |          | 97.71%                       | 99.97%                 |
| 2010/11     | 3,042,236,461 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2900                   |          | 97.61%                       | 99.34%                 |
| 2011/12     | 3,048,544,609 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2900                   |          | 97.80%                       | 99.63%                 |
| 2012/13     | 3,095,495,016 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2800                   |          | 98.13%                       | 100.54%                |
| 2013/14     | 3,119,027,088 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2800                   |          | 98.54%                       | 100.16%                |
| 2014/15     | 3,202,761,366 <sup>(1)</sup>    | 1.2800                   |          | 98.60% <sup>(7)</sup>        | 100.50% <sup>(7)</sup> |
| 2015/16     | 3,339,863,357 <sup>(1)(2)</sup> | 1.2800                   |          | 97.75%                       | 99.92%                 |
| 2016/17     | 3,473,711,582 <sup>(1)(2)</sup> | 1.2800                   |          | 98.00%                       | 100.09%                |
| 2017/18     | 3,740,672,719 <sup>(1)(2)</sup> | 1.2786                   |          | 98.09%                       | 100.10%                |
| 2018/19     | 4,189,223,564 <sup>(2)(3)</sup> |                          |          |                              |                        |

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division. See the Assessed Valuation section in this Appendix for additional information.  
(2) The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.  
(3) Certified Values from the Burnet and Travis Central Appraisal Districts as of August 2018.  
(4) Source: Marble Falls ISD Audited Financial Statements.  
(5) Excludes penalties and interest.  
(6) The declines in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax for the 2006/07 and 2007/08 fiscal years are a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.  
(7) For the ten months ending June 30, 2015. The District changed its fiscal year ending from August 31 to June 30 during fiscal year 2015.

**TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION <sup>(1)</sup>**

|                          | 2014/15  | 2015/16  | 2016/17  | 2017/18  | 2018/19  |
|--------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Maintenance & Operations | \$1.0533 | \$1.0533 | \$1.0533 | \$1.0533 | \$1.0533 |
| Debt Service             | \$0.2267 | \$0.2267 | \$0.2267 | \$0.2253 | \$0.2153 |
| Total Tax Rate           | \$1.2800 | \$1.2800 | \$1.2800 | \$1.2786 | \$1.2686 |

(1) On August 25, 2012 the District successfully held a tax ratification election at which the voters of the District approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed \$1.0533.

**VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY**

| Fiscal Year | Net Taxable Valuation        | Bond Debt Outstanding <sup>(1)</sup> | Ratio Debt to A.V. <sup>(2)</sup> |
|-------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2006/07     | \$ 2,101,127,430             | \$ 46,954,302                        | 2.23%                             |
| 2007/08     | 2,357,582,531                | 74,494,745                           | 3.16%                             |
| 2008/09     | 2,781,973,466                | 82,779,098                           | 2.98%                             |
| 2009/10     | 2,985,617,725                | 81,114,098                           | 2.72%                             |
| 2010/11     | 3,042,236,461                | 77,664,098                           | 2.55%                             |
| 2011/12     | 3,048,544,609                | 74,498,864                           | 2.44%                             |
| 2012/13     | 3,095,495,016                | 71,164,585                           | 2.30%                             |
| 2013/14     | 3,119,027,088                | 71,261,595                           | 2.28%                             |
| 2014/15     | 3,202,761,366                | 67,524,742                           | 2.11%                             |
| 2015/16     | 3,339,863,357                | 64,444,544                           | 1.93%                             |
| 2016/17     | 3,473,711,582                | 60,170,000                           | 1.73%                             |
| 2017/18     | 3,740,672,719                | 55,065,000                           | 1.47%                             |
| 2018/19     | 4,189,223,564 <sup>(3)</sup> | 104,785,000 <sup>(4)</sup>           | 2.50%                             |

(1) At Fiscal Year End. Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

(2) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended June 30, 2018" in Appendix D for more information.

(3) Certified Values from the Burnet and Travis Central Appraisal Districts as of August 2018.

(4) Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

**ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT**

| Taxing Body   | Amount        | Percent Overlapping | Amount Overlapping |
|---|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Burnet County   | \$ 23,440,000 | 51.27%              | \$ 12,017,688      |
| Cottonwood Shores, City of                                      | 1,345,000     | 100.00%             | 1,345,000          |
| Granite Shoals, City of   | 11,393,000    | 100.00%             | 11,393,000         |
| Highland Haven, City of   | 10,293        | 100.00%             | 10,293             |
| Horseshoe Bay, City of  | 8,357,227     | 10.90%              | 910,938            |
| Marble Falls, City of   | 29,760,996    | 100.00%             | 29,760,996         |
| Meadowlakes, City of  | 2,025,000     | 100.00%             | 2,025,000          |
| Travis County   | 705,136,179   | 0.35%               | 2,467,977          |
| Travis County, ESD #1   | 595,000       | 10.97%              | 65,272             |
| Travis County Healthcare District                               | 9,380,000     | 0.35%               | 32,830             |
| Total Overlapping Debt <sup>(1)</sup>                           |               |                     | \$ 60,028,992      |
| Marble Falls Independent School District <sup>(2) (3)</sup>     |               |                     | 100,716,755        |
| Total Direct & Overlapping Debt                                 |               |                     | \$ 160,745,747     |
| Ratio of Net Direct & Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation |               | 3.84%               |                    |
| Per Capita Direct & Overlapping Debt                            |               | \$6,253             |                    |

(1) Equals gross-debt less self-supporting debt.

(2) Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

(3) Excludes interest accreted on capital appreciation bonds.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.

**PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS****2018/19 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(1)</sup>**

| Name of Taxpayer                | Type of Business             | Taxable Value         | % of Net<br>Valuation |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| APAC Texas Inc.                 | Paving Contractor            | \$ 26,453,456         | 0.63%                 |
| Pedernales Electric Co-Op.      | Electric Utility             | 20,138,160            | 0.48%                 |
| The Worldmark Club              | Hotel                        | 16,030,944            | 0.38%                 |
| HTA-Marble Falls MOB LLC        | Real Estate Development      | 14,321,840            | 0.34%                 |
| Bry Spaar Partnership           | Land Partnership             | 14,000,000            | 0.33%                 |
| Arbor Way Inc                   | Real Estate                  | 13,238,743            | 0.32%                 |
| Huber Carbonates LLC            | Furniture/Fixtures/Equipment | 11,946,834            | 0.29%                 |
| LHOIST North America            | Quarry                       | 11,035,617            | 0.26%                 |
| LCRA Transmission Services Corp | Electric Utility             | 9,946,268             | 0.24%                 |
| Castle Acres LLC                | Real Estate                  | 9,824,877             | 0.23%                 |
|                                 |                              | <u>\$ 146,936,739</u> | <u>3.51%</u>          |

**2017/18 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(2)</sup>**

| Name of Taxpayer                | Type of Business             | Taxable Value         | % of Net<br>Valuation |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| APAC Texas Inc.                 | Paving Contractor            | \$ 24,506,956         | 0.66%                 |
| Pedernales Electric Co-Op.      | Electric Utility             | 21,579,994            | 0.58%                 |
| HTA-Marble Falls MOB LLC        | Real Estate Development      | 14,616,860            | 0.39%                 |
| Arbor Way Inc                   | Real Estate                  | 13,082,498            | 0.35%                 |
| Huber Carbonates LLC            | Furniture/Fixtures/Equipment | 12,953,641            | 0.35%                 |
| LCRA Transmission Services Corp | Electric Utility             | 11,547,639            | 0.31%                 |
| LHOIST North America            | Quarry                       | 10,558,817            | 0.28%                 |
| Wal-Mart                        | Retail                       | 9,919,467             | 0.27%                 |
| The Worldmark Club              | Hotel                        | 9,000,000             | 0.24%                 |
| Castle Acres LLC                | Real Estate                  | 8,257,638             | 0.22%                 |
|                                 |                              | <u>\$ 136,023,510</u> | <u>3.64%</u>          |

**2016/17 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(2)</sup>**

| Name of Taxpayer                | Type of Business             | Taxable Value         | % of Net<br>Valuation |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| APAC Texas Inc.                 | Paving Contractor            | \$ 17,494,390         | 0.50%                 |
| Wal-Mart                        | Retail                       | 16,002,928            | 0.46%                 |
| Duke Realty Development LLC     | Real Estate                  | 14,837,130            | 0.43%                 |
| Arbor Way Inc                   | Real Estate                  | 12,951,567            | 0.37%                 |
| Pedernales Electric Co-Op.      | Electric Utility             | 12,108,553            | 0.35%                 |
| LHOIST North America            | Quarry                       | 11,871,863            | 0.34%                 |
| Huber Carbonates LLC            | Furniture/Fixtures/Equipment | 9,620,425             | 0.28%                 |
| LCRA Transmission Services Corp | Electric Utility             | 7,321,930             | 0.21%                 |
| Gary & Diane H Heavin           | Residential                  | 7,021,190             | 0.20%                 |
| RJ & Stephanie Pipkin           | Residential                  | 6,973,291             | 0.20%                 |
|                                 |                              | <u>\$ 116,203,267</u> | <u>3.35%</u>          |

(1) Source: Burnet and Travis Central Appraisal Districts.

(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

**CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY**

| <b>Category</b>                            | <b>2018/19 <sup>(1)</sup></b>     | <b>% of<br/>Total</b> | <b>2017/18 <sup>(2)</sup></b>     | <b>% of<br/>Total</b> | <b>2016/17 <sup>(2)</sup></b>     | <b>% of<br/>Total</b> |
|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Real, Residential, Single-Family           | \$ 2,950,630,098                  | 52.73%                | \$ 2,630,167,028                  | 53.72%                | \$ 2,463,623,192                  | 54.00%                |
| Real, Residential, Multi-Family            | 60,785,381                        | 1.09%                 | 48,979,416                        | 1.00%                 | 37,603,005                        | 0.82%                 |
| Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts                   | 242,498,660                       | 4.33%                 | 197,000,328                       | 4.02%                 | 203,897,893                       | 4.47%                 |
| Real, Acreage                              | 1,082,031,504                     | 19.34%                | 912,081,934                       | 18.63%                | 865,433,433                       | 18.97%                |
| Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements            | 451,464,904                       | 8.07%                 | 382,462,627                       | 7.81%                 | 344,603,086                       | 7.55%                 |
| Real, Commercial & Industrial              | 500,942,202                       | 8.95%                 | 442,460,397                       | 9.04%                 | 413,103,498                       | 9.05%                 |
| Oil & Gas                                  | 73,433                            | 0.00%                 | 73,703                            | 0.00%                 | 73,738                            | 0.00%                 |
| Mineral Reserves                           | 2,930                             | 0.00%                 | 6,047                             | 0.00%                 | 2,930                             | 0.00%                 |
| Utilities                                  | 43,064,121                        | 0.77%                 | 45,319,666                        | 0.93%                 | 32,832,394                        | 0.72%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Commercial              | 127,329,631                       | 2.28%                 | 115,523,059                       | 2.36%                 | 111,125,506                       | 2.44%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Industrial              | 91,535,319                        | 1.64%                 | 86,030,393                        | 1.76%                 | 51,912,210                        | 1.14%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other    | 18,400,947                        | 0.33%                 | 12,943,009                        | 0.26%                 | 12,256,574                        | 0.27%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory   | 14,543,242                        | 0.26%                 | 11,244,675                        | 0.23%                 | 15,212,140                        | 0.33%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Special Inventory       | <u>12,039,307</u>                 | <u>0.22%</u>          | <u>11,329,833</u>                 | <u>0.23%</u>          | <u>10,583,268</u>                 | <u>0.23%</u>          |
| <b>Total Appraised Value</b>               | <b>\$ 5,595,341,679</b>           | <b>100.00%</b>        | <b>\$ 4,895,622,115</b>           | <b>100.00%</b>        | <b>\$ 4,562,262,867</b>           | <b>100.00%</b>        |
| <b>Less:</b>                               |                                   |                       |                                   |                       |                                   |                       |
| Homestead Cap Adjustment                   | \$ 105,563,818                    |                       | \$ 41,361,425                     |                       | \$ 32,312,597                     |                       |
| Productivity Loss                          | 1,061,351,429                     |                       | 891,334,839                       |                       | 844,830,918                       |                       |
| Exemptions                                 | <u>239,202,868 <sup>(3)</sup></u> |                       | <u>222,253,132 <sup>(3)</sup></u> |                       | <u>211,407,770 <sup>(3)</sup></u> |                       |
| Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(4)</sup> | <u>\$ 1,406,118,115</u>           |                       | <u>\$ 1,154,949,396</u>           |                       | <u>\$ 1,088,551,285</u>           |                       |
| <b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>      | <b>\$ 4,189,223,564</b>           |                       | <b>\$ 3,740,672,719</b>           |                       | <b>\$ 3,473,711,582</b>           |                       |

| <b>Category</b>                            | <b>2015/16 <sup>(2)</sup></b>     | <b>% of<br/>Total</b> | <b>2014/15 <sup>(2)</sup></b> | <b>% of<br/>Total</b> | <b>2013/14 <sup>(2)</sup></b> | <b>% of<br/>Total</b> |
|--|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Real, Residential, Single-Family           | \$ 2,358,488,658                  | 54.40%                | \$ 2,213,805,189              | 54.33%                | \$ 2,170,827,303              | 54.39%                |
| Real, Residential, Multi-Family            | 31,295,163                        | 0.72%                 | 30,500,481                    | 0.75%                 | 30,808,977                    | 0.77%                 |
| Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts                   | 207,042,054                       | 4.78%                 | 213,683,048                   | 5.24%                 | 228,089,338                   | 5.72%                 |
| Real, Acreage                              | 782,767,650                       | 18.05%                | 723,557,789                   | 17.76%                | 727,974,468                   | 18.24%                |
| Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements            | 328,953,784                       | 7.59%                 | 302,148,139                   | 7.42%                 | 288,390,161                   | 7.23%                 |
| Real, Commercial & Industrial              | 399,569,204                       | 9.22%                 | 374,642,967                   | 9.19%                 | 337,396,483                   | 8.45%                 |
| Oil & Gas                                  | 73,738                            | 0.00%                 | 73,738                        | 0.00%                 | 73,738                        | 0.00%                 |
| Mineral Reserves                           | 2,930                             | 0.00%                 | 2,930                         | 0.00%                 | 2,930                         | 0.00%                 |
| Utilities                                  | 31,943,033                        | 0.74%                 | 30,266,934                    | 0.74%                 | 28,280,529                    | 0.71%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Commercial              | 106,853,677                       | 2.46%                 | 106,869,543                   | 2.62%                 | 99,980,456                    | 2.51%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Industrial              | 50,786,814                        | 1.17%                 | 45,580,070                    | 1.12%                 | 47,365,300                    | 1.19%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other    | 12,163,651                        | 0.28%                 | 12,342,698                    | 0.30%                 | 12,250,203                    | 0.31%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory   | 16,319,662                        | 0.38%                 | 11,613,851                    | 0.29%                 | 11,001,598                    | 0.28%                 |
| Tangible Personal, Special Inventory       | <u>9,221,089</u>                  | <u>0.21%</u>          | <u>9,432,472</u>              | <u>0.23%</u>          | <u>8,612,046</u>              | <u>0.22%</u>          |
| <b>Total Appraised Value</b>               | <b>\$ 4,335,481,107</b>           | <b>100.00%</b>        | <b>\$ 4,074,519,849</b>       | <b>100.00%</b>        | <b>\$ 3,991,053,530</b>       | <b>100.00%</b>        |
| <b>Less:</b>                               |                                   |                       |                               |                       |                               |                       |
| Homestead Cap Adjustment                   | \$ 25,272,143                     |                       | \$ 20,764,497                 |                       | \$ 20,240,820                 |                       |
| Productivity Loss                          | 762,932,064                       |                       | 704,233,526                   |                       | 708,560,746                   |                       |
| Exemptions                                 | <u>207,413,543 <sup>(3)</sup></u> |                       | <u>146,760,460</u>            |                       | <u>143,224,876</u>            |                       |
| Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(4)</sup> | <u>\$ 995,617,750</u>             |                       | <u>\$ 871,758,483</u>         |                       | <u>\$ 872,026,442</u>         |                       |
| <b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>      | <b>\$ 3,339,863,357</b>           |                       | <b>\$ 3,202,761,366</b>       |                       | <b>\$ 3,119,027,088</b>       |                       |

(1) Source: Certified Totals from the Burnet and Travis Central Appraisal Districts as of August 2018.

(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(3) The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(4) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

**PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE <sup>(1)</sup>**

| Fiscal Year<br>Ending 8/31 | Outstanding<br>Bonds <sup>(2)</sup> | Plus:<br>The<br>Bonds <sup>(3)</sup> | Total <sup>(2) (3)</sup> | Bonds<br>Unpaid<br>At Year End | Percent of<br>Principal<br>Retired |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 2019                       | \$ 5,280,000.00                     | \$ -                                 | \$ 5,280,000.00          | \$ 104,785,000.00              | 4.80%                              |
| 2020                       | 2,050,000.00                        | 1,520,000.00                         | 3,570,000.00             | 101,215,000.00                 | 8.04%                              |
| 2021                       | 2,120,000.00                        | 1,780,000.00                         | 3,900,000.00             | 97,315,000.00                  | 11.58%                             |
| 2022                       | 2,205,000.00                        | 2,050,000.00                         | 4,255,000.00             | 93,060,000.00                  | 15.45%                             |
| 2023                       | 3,970,000.00                        | 1,490,000.00                         | 5,460,000.00             | 87,600,000.00                  | 20.41%                             |
| 2024                       | 4,105,000.00                        | 1,535,000.00                         | 5,640,000.00             | 81,960,000.00                  | 25.53%                             |
| 2025                       | 2,240,000.00                        | 2,405,000.00                         | 4,645,000.00             | 77,315,000.00                  | 29.76%                             |
| 2026                       | 2,335,000.00                        | 2,475,000.00                         | 4,810,000.00             | 72,505,000.00                  | 34.13%                             |
| 2027                       | 2,430,000.00                        | 2,550,000.00                         | 4,980,000.00             | 67,525,000.00                  | 38.65%                             |
| 2028                       | 2,505,000.00                        | 2,640,000.00                         | 5,145,000.00             | 62,380,000.00                  | 43.32%                             |
| 2029                       | 2,205,000.00                        | 2,735,000.00                         | 4,940,000.00             | 57,440,000.00                  | 47.81%                             |
| 2030                       | 2,640,000.00                        | 2,830,000.00                         | 5,470,000.00             | 51,970,000.00                  | 52.78%                             |
| 2031                       | 2,725,000.00                        | 2,930,000.00                         | 5,655,000.00             | 46,315,000.00                  | 57.92%                             |
| 2032                       | 2,815,000.00                        | 3,045,000.00                         | 5,860,000.00             | 40,455,000.00                  | 63.24%                             |
| 2033                       | 2,905,000.00                        | 3,165,000.00                         | 6,070,000.00             | 34,385,000.00                  | 68.76%                             |
| 2034                       | 2,995,000.00                        | 3,290,000.00                         | 6,285,000.00             | 28,100,000.00                  | 74.47%                             |
| 2035                       | 3,085,000.00                        | 3,425,000.00                         | 6,510,000.00             | 21,590,000.00                  | 80.38%                             |
| 2036                       | 3,180,000.00                        | 3,560,000.00                         | 6,740,000.00             | 14,850,000.00                  | 86.51%                             |
| 2037                       | 3,275,000.00                        | 3,710,000.00                         | 6,985,000.00             | 7,865,000.00                   | 92.85%                             |
| 2038                       |                                     | 3,855,000.00                         | 3,855,000.00             | 4,010,000.00                   | 96.36%                             |
| 2039                       |                                     | 4,010,000.00                         | 4,010,000.00             | -                              | 100.00%                            |
| Total                      | <u>\$ 55,065,000.00</u>             | <u>\$ 55,000,000.00</u>              | <u>\$ 110,065,000.00</u> |                                |                                    |

(1) The Bonds are illustrated on the State of Texas fiscal year end of August 31st, although the District's fiscal year ends June 30th.

(2) Excludes the value on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

(3) Preliminary, subject to change.



**DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS <sup>(1)</sup>**

| Fiscal Year<br>Ending 8/31 | Outstanding<br>Debt Service <sup>(2)</sup> | Plus:<br>The Bonds <sup>(3)</sup> |                         |                         | Combined<br>Total <sup>(2) (3) (4)</sup> |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--|
|                            |  | Principal                         | Interest                | Total                   |  |
| 2019                       | \$ 7,159,500.00                            | \$ -                              | \$ 1,085,147.08         | \$ 1,085,147.08         | \$ 8,244,647.08                          |
| 2020                       | 5,390,100.00                               | 1,520,000.00                      | 2,013,675.00            | 3,533,675.00            | 8,923,775.00                             |
| 2021                       | 5,389,800.00                               | 1,780,000.00                      | 1,968,075.00            | 3,748,075.00            | 9,137,875.00                             |
| 2022                       | 5,388,550.00                               | 2,050,000.00                      | 1,914,675.00            | 3,964,675.00            | 9,353,225.00                             |
| 2023                       | 5,393,200.00                               | 1,490,000.00                      | 1,853,175.00            | 3,343,175.00            | 8,736,375.00                             |
| 2024                       | 5,392,500.00                               | 1,535,000.00                      | 1,808,475.00            | 3,343,475.00            | 8,735,975.00                             |
| 2025                       | 3,381,225.00                               | 2,405,000.00                      | 1,762,425.00            | 4,167,425.00            | 7,548,650.00                             |
| 2026                       | 3,383,025.00                               | 2,475,000.00                      | 1,690,275.00            | 4,165,275.00            | 7,548,300.00                             |
| 2027                       | 3,380,525.00                               | 2,550,000.00                      | 1,616,025.00            | 4,166,025.00            | 7,546,550.00                             |
| 2028                       | 3,382,775.00                               | 2,640,000.00                      | 1,526,775.00            | 4,166,775.00            | 7,549,550.00                             |
| 2029                       | 3,381,400.00                               | 2,735,000.00                      | 1,434,375.00            | 4,169,375.00            | 7,550,775.00                             |
| 2030                       | 3,379,062.50                               | 2,830,000.00                      | 1,338,650.00            | 4,168,650.00            | 7,547,712.50                             |
| 2031                       | 3,379,037.50                               | 2,930,000.00                      | 1,239,600.00            | 4,169,600.00            | 7,548,637.50                             |
| 2032                       | 3,380,662.50                               | 3,045,000.00                      | 1,122,400.00            | 4,167,400.00            | 7,548,062.50                             |
| 2033                       | 3,382,687.50                               | 3,165,000.00                      | 1,000,600.00            | 4,165,600.00            | 7,548,287.50                             |
| 2034                       | 3,382,387.50                               | 3,290,000.00                      | 874,000.00              | 4,164,000.00            | 7,546,387.50                             |
| 2035                       | 3,379,312.50                               | 3,425,000.00                      | 742,400.00              | 4,167,400.00            | 7,546,712.50                             |
| 2036                       | 3,380,993.76                               | 3,560,000.00                      | 605,400.00              | 4,165,400.00            | 7,546,393.76                             |
| 2037                       | 3,378,162.50                               | 3,710,000.00                      | 463,000.00              | 4,173,000.00            | 7,551,162.50                             |
| 2038                       |  | 3,855,000.00                      | 314,600.00              | 4,169,600.00            | 4,169,600.00                             |
| 2039                       |  | 4,010,000.00                      | 160,400.00              | 4,170,400.00            | 4,170,400.00                             |
|                            | <u>\$ 78,064,906.26</u>                    | <u>\$ 55,000,000.00</u>           | <u>\$ 26,534,147.08</u> | <u>\$ 81,534,147.08</u> | <u>\$ 159,599,053.34</u>                 |

(1) Debt service for the Bonds is illustrated on the State of Texas fiscal year end of August 31st, although the District's fiscal year ends on June 30th.

(2) Includes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

(3) Preliminary, subject to change.

(4) Based on its wealth per student, the District does not expect to receive state financial assistance for debt service in 2018/19. The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS**

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement <sup>(1)</sup>  | \$ 9,353,225.00        |
| Projected State Financial Assistance for Hold Harmless of Increased Homestead Exemption <sup>(2)</sup> | 109,800.00             |
| Projected Net Debt Service Requirement   | <u>\$ 9,243,425.00</u> |
| \$0.22515 Tax Rate @ 98% Collections Produces  | \$ 9,243,425.02        |
| 2018/19 Certified Net Taxable Assessed Valuation   | \$ 4,189,223,564       |

(1) Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS**

Following the issuance of the Bonds, the District will not have authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax bonds from the November 6, 2018 or any other election. The District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

**COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES <sup>(1)</sup>**

|   | Fiscal Year Ending   |                      |                      |                      |                      |
|---|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|   | 2014                 | 2015 <sup>(2)</sup>  | 2016                 | 2017                 | 2018                 |
| <b>Beginning Fund Balance</b>                     | <b>\$ 9,955,299</b>  | <b>\$ 10,869,498</b> | <b>\$ 12,813,847</b> | <b>\$ 13,815,544</b> | <b>\$ 13,980,959</b> |
| <b>Revenues:</b>                                  |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |
| Local and Intermediate Sources                    | \$ 34,800,957        | \$ 33,775,554        | \$ 33,949,240        | \$ 35,411,687        | \$ 38,352,045        |
| State Sources                                     | 4,446,085            | 3,449,032            | 3,487,478            | 4,501,922            | 4,539,255            |
| Federal Sources & Other                           | 748,951              | 756,249              | 930,530              | 918,092              | 769,113              |
| <b>Total Revenues</b>                             | <b>\$ 39,995,993</b> | <b>\$ 37,980,835</b> | <b>\$ 38,367,248</b> | <b>\$ 40,831,701</b> | <b>\$ 43,660,413</b> |
| <b>Expenditures:</b>                              |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |
| Instruction                                       | \$ 17,634,655        | \$ 16,772,830        | \$ 18,712,761        | \$ 19,657,946        | \$ 20,666,735        |
| Instructional Resources & Media Services          | 425,857              | 396,531              | 391,817              | 441,458              | 443,995              |
| Curriculum & Staff Development                    | 335,655              | 394,191              | 516,798              | 515,359              | 343,145              |
| Instructional Leadership                          | 471,157              | 614,071              | 797,200              | 950,297              | 1,026,081            |
| School Leadership                                 | 2,126,369            | 1,711,376            | 2,037,121            | 2,203,379            | 2,275,630            |
| Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services        | 1,107,434            | 839,362              | 1,066,043            | 1,089,933            | 1,160,548            |
| Social Work Services                              | 49,797               | 37,646               | 47,328               | 48,391               | 63,450               |
| Health Services                                   | 363,142              | 309,080              | 386,651              | 357,764              | 394,064              |
| Student (Pupil) Transportation                    | 1,575,994            | 1,514,629            | 1,562,835            | 1,740,764            | 2,026,938            |
| Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities           | 1,456,098            | 1,281,185            | 1,562,981            | 1,816,084            | 1,571,791            |
| General Administration                            | 1,203,202            | 1,030,966            | 1,301,186            | 1,366,192            | 1,478,107            |
| Plant Maintenance & Operations                    | 4,229,186            | 3,780,226            | 4,259,162            | 4,569,072            | 4,834,320            |
| Security & Monitoring Services                    | 126,361              | 120,377              | 118,218              | 115,906              | 132,213              |
| Data Processing Services                          | 1,831,506            | 1,451,096            | 1,761,543            | 1,724,895            | 2,023,316            |
| Community Services                                | 56,905               | 54,234               | 77,181               | 66,232               | 41,498               |
| Debt Service - Principal on Long Term Debt        | -                    | -                    | -                    | -                    | 184,034              |
| Capital Outlay                                    | 2,589,550            | 1,854,324            | 25,944               | -                    | -                    |
| Contracted Instr. Services Between Public Schools | 2,863,178            | 3,237,440            | 2,107,398            | 3,368,903            | 4,901,452            |
| Other Intergovernmental Charges                   | 645,982              | 636,922              | 631,384              | 634,772              | 679,971              |
| <b>Total Expenditures</b>                         | <b>\$ 39,092,028</b> | <b>\$ 36,036,486</b> | <b>\$ 37,363,551</b> | <b>\$ 40,667,347</b> | <b>\$ 44,247,288</b> |
| Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues                   |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |
| over Expenditures                                 | \$ 903,965           | \$ 1,944,349         | \$ 1,003,697         | \$ 164,354           | \$ (586,875)         |
| <b>Other Resources and (Uses):</b>                |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |
| Sale of Real or Personal Property                 | \$ 10,235            | \$ -                 | \$ -                 | \$ 1,061             | \$ 1,875             |
| Capital Leases                                    | -                    | -                    | -                    | -                    | 549,640              |
| Operating Transfers In                            | 5,000                | -                    | -                    | -                    | -                    |
| Operating Transfers Out                           | (5,000)              | -                    | -                    | -                    | (824,141)            |
| Other Uses  | -                    | -                    | (2,000)              | -                    | -                    |
| <b>Total Other Resources (Uses)</b>               | <b>\$ 10,235</b>     | <b>\$ -</b>          | <b>\$ (2,000)</b>    | <b>\$ 1,061</b>      | <b>\$ (272,626)</b>  |
| Excess (Deficiency) of                            |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |
| Revenues and Other Sources                        |                      |                      |                      |                      |                      |
| over Expenditures and Other Uses                  | \$ 914,200           | \$ 1,944,349         | \$ 1,001,697         | \$ 165,415           | \$ (859,501)         |
| <b>Ending Fund Balance <sup>(2)</sup></b>         | <b>\$ 10,869,499</b> | <b>\$ 12,813,847</b> | <b>\$ 13,815,544</b> | <b>\$ 13,980,959</b> | <b>\$ 13,121,458</b> |

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS - ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2015/16 budget and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition" in the Official Statement.

(2) For the ten months ending June 30, 2015. The District changed its fiscal year ending from August 31 to June 30 during fiscal year 2015.

**CHANGE IN NET ASSETS <sup>(1)</sup>**

|  | Fiscal Year Ending   |                               |                      |                      |                                |
|--|----------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
|  | 2014                 | 2015 <sup>(2)</sup>           | 2016                 | 2017                 | 2018                           |
| <b>Revenues:</b>                                 |                      |                               |                      |                      |                                |
| <b>Program Revenues:</b>                         |                      |                               |                      |                      |                                |
| Charges for Services                             | \$ 799,520           | \$ 765,878                    | \$ 858,048           | \$ 889,829           | \$ 1,280,661                   |
| Operating Grants and Contributions               | 8,203,831            | 5,161,153                     | 5,387,643            | 5,488,164            | (218,701)                      |
| <b>General Revenues:</b>                         |                      |                               |                      |                      |                                |
| Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes       | 31,365,838           | 32,082,330                    | 33,463,577           | 34,780,455           | 36,192,937                     |
| Property Taxes Levied for Debt Service           | 6,797,875            | 6,903,570                     | 7,344,224            | 7,561,168            | 7,754,477                      |
| State Aid - Formula Grants                       | -                    | -                             | -                    | -                    | 2,636,765                      |
| Investment Earnings                              | 116,353              | 65,701                        | 102,255              | 190,819              | 411,445                        |
| Grants and Contributions Not Restricted          | 4,205,345            | 4,550,583                     | 5,779,904            | 6,420,027            | 7,963,362                      |
| Miscellaneous                                    | 3,335,989            | 1,804,467                     | 433,661              | 447,182              | 1,690,416                      |
| <b>Total Revenue</b>                             | <u>\$ 54,824,751</u> | <u>\$ 51,333,682</u>          | <u>\$ 53,369,312</u> | <u>\$ 55,777,644</u> | <u>\$ 57,711,362</u>           |
| <b>Expenses:</b>                                 |                      |                               |                      |                      |                                |
| Instruction                                      | \$ 22,917,067        | \$ 21,652,072                 | \$ 24,573,219        | \$ 25,492,041        | \$ 21,651,037                  |
| Instruction Resources & Media Services           | 512,110              | 472,076                       | 505,761              | 539,373              | 492,568                        |
| Curriculum & Staff Development                   | 849,427              | 664,740                       | 857,138              | 822,561              | 561,059                        |
| Instructional Leadership                         | 908,537              | 885,908                       | 1,085,578            | 1,199,890            | 1,047,175                      |
| School Leadership                                | 2,332,254            | 1,915,267                     | 2,347,355            | 2,459,555            | 2,145,813                      |
| Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services       | 1,296,675            | 964,511                       | 1,254,477            | 1,258,876            | 1,119,201                      |
| Social Work Services                             | 49,797               | 37,275                        | 49,526               | 49,675               | 54,606                         |
| Health Services                                  | 412,959              | 356,537                       | 464,727              | 424,676              | 383,687                        |
| Student Transportation                           | 1,903,920            | 1,724,787                     | 2,012,171            | 1,765,607            | 1,814,230                      |
| Food Service                                     | 2,289,971            | 2,188,413                     | 2,476,715            | 2,522,125            | 2,419,190                      |
| Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities          | 1,580,474            | 1,404,200                     | 1,723,982            | 1,828,174            | 1,460,262                      |
| General Administration                           | 1,370,344            | 1,174,727                     | 1,573,542            | 1,539,299            | 1,423,509                      |
| Plant Maintenance & Operations                   | 4,522,460            | 4,119,110                     | 4,898,293            | 4,932,735            | 4,733,965                      |
| Security & Monitoring Services                   | 109,183              | 121,614                       | 122,258              | 118,876              | 126,426                        |
| Data Processing Services                         | 1,215,787            | 2,037,303                     | 1,834,303            | 1,717,126            | 1,940,674                      |
| Community Services                               | 98,429               | 97,728                        | 122,039              | 110,607              | 75,645                         |
| Interest on Long-term Debt                       | 3,527,451            | 2,885,922                     | 7,858,899            | (3,269,268)          | 1,513,500                      |
| Bond Issuance Cost & Fees                        | 174,080              | 101,084                       | 197,400              | 172,408              | 4,500                          |
| Contracted Instr. Services Between Schools       | 2,863,178            | 3,237,440                     | 2,107,398            | 3,368,903            | 4,901,452                      |
| Payments Related to Shared Services Arrangements | 726,594              | 666,853                       | 758,592              | 739,211              | 672,941                        |
| Other Intergovernmental Charges                  | 645,982              | 636,922                       | 631,384              | 634,772              | 679,971                        |
| <b>Total Expenditures</b>                        | <u>\$ 50,306,679</u> | <u>\$ 47,344,489</u>          | <u>\$ 57,454,757</u> | <u>\$ 48,427,222</u> | <u>\$ 49,221,411</u>           |
| <b>Change in Net Assets</b>                      | \$ 4,518,072         | \$ 3,989,193                  | \$ (4,085,445)       | \$ 7,350,422         | \$ 8,489,951                   |
| <b>Beginning Net Assets</b>                      | \$ 30,251,965        | \$ 34,770,040                 | \$ 33,299,482        | \$ 29,214,042        | \$ 36,564,464                  |
| <b>Prior Period Adjustment</b>                   | \$ -                 | \$ (5,459,805) <sup>(3)</sup> | \$ -                 | \$ -                 | \$ (27,332,228) <sup>(4)</sup> |
| <b>Ending Net Assets</b>                         | <u>\$ 34,770,037</u> | <u>\$ 33,299,428</u>          | <u>\$ 29,214,037</u> | <u>\$ 36,564,464</u> | <u>\$ 17,222,187</u>           |

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB 34.

(2) For the ten months ending June 30, 2015. The district changed its fiscal year ending from August 31 to June 30 during fiscal year 2015.

(3) In 2015 the District implemented GASB Statement Number 68, which changed the accounting for pensions.

(4) In accordance with the adoption of GASB No. 75 in 2017/18, the District must record its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability related to its contributions to TRS-Care Cost-sharing other than pension plan at the beginning of the measurement period ending August 31, 2017. See "Notes to the Financial Statement" in Appendix D hereto for more information.

## **APPENDIX B**

### **GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT AND ITS ECONOMY**

# MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## General and Economic Information

Marble Falls Independent School District (the "District") is a ranching and recreational area located in the southern portion of Burnet County, with a portion in Travis County. Within the District is the City of Marble Falls, a market and tourist center located on U.S. Highway 281 in the Central Texas Highland Lakes region. Granite Mountain is the site of a quarry where commercial granite is recovered in vast quantities. Several lakes attract tourists to the District.

Burnet County (the "County") is a central Texas County traversed by U.S. Highways 183 and 281, State Highways 29 and 71 and six farm-to-market roads. Lake LBJ, Lake Marble Falls and a portion of Lake Travis make the county a popular water sports recreational area.

Source: *Texas Municipal Report for Marble Falls ISD and Burnet County.*

## Enrollment Statistics

| <u>Year Ending 8/31</u> | <u>Enrollment</u> |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 2006                    | 3,756             |
| 2007                    | 3,873             |
| 2008                    | 3,798             |
| 2009                    | 3,836             |
| 2010                    | 3,927             |
| 2011                    | 3,929             |
| 2012                    | 3,942             |
| 2013                    | 3,883             |
| 2014                    | 3,980             |
| 2015                    | 4,015             |
| 2016                    | 4,123             |
| 2017                    | 4,209             |
| 2018                    | 4,154             |
| Current                 | 4,267             |

## District Staff

|                                     |           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| Teachers                            | 331       |
| Auxiliary Personnel                 | 156       |
| Teachers' Aides & Secretaries       | 128       |
| Administrators                      | 34        |
| Other (Counselors, RNs, Librarians) | <u>34</u> |
|                                     | 683       |

## Facilities

| <u>Campus</u>              | <u>Grades</u> | <u>Current Enrollment</u> | <u>Capacity</u> | <u>Year Built</u> | <u>Year of Addition/<br/>Renovation</u> |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---|
| Colt Elementary            | PK-5          | 627                       | 650             | 2010              | NA                                      |
| Highland Lakes Elementary  | PK-5          | 607                       | 750             | 1998              | 2003, 2010                              |
| Marble Falls Elementary    | PK-5          | 598                       | 650             | 1939              | 1973, 1991, 2002, 2010                  |
| Spicewood Elementary       | PK-5          | 221                       | 450             | 2004              | NA                                      |
| Marble Falls Middle School | 6-8           | 953                       | 1,200           | 1967              | 1986, 1994, 2010                        |
| Falls Career High School   | 9-12          | 39                        | 200             | 1986              | 2004, 2010                              |
| Marble Falls High School   | 9-12          | 1,222                     | 1,500           | 1988              | 2002, 2004, 2010                        |

### Principal Employers within the District

| <u>Name of Company</u>      | <u>Type of Business</u> | <u>Number of Employees</u> |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| Marble Falls ISD            | Education               | 683                        |
| Wal Mart Corp               | Discount Retailer       | 332                        |
| H.E.B. Grocery Corp         | Grocery Store           | 195                        |
| Lowe's                      | Home Improvement        | 120                        |
| City of Marble Falls        | Municipal Government    | 116                        |
| Johnson-Sewell Ford Lincoln | Auto Industry           | 116                        |
| Home Depot Company          | Home Improvement        | 99                         |

### Unemployment Rates

|                | <u>October<br/>2016</u> | <u>October<br/>2017</u> | <u>October<br/>2018</u> |
|----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Burnet County  | 3.5%                    | 2.7%                    | 2.7%                    |
| State of Texas | 4.7%                    | 3.7%                    | 3.5%                    |

Source: Texas Workforce Commission.

**APPENDIX C**

**FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL**



**Orrick, Herrington & Sutcliffe LLP**

300 W. 6<sup>th</sup> Street

Suite 1850

Austin, TX 78701

+1 512 582 6950

**orrick.com**

\_\_\_\_\_, 2019

WE HAVE ACTED as Bond Counsel in connection with the issuance by the Marble Falls Independent School District (the “District”) of its Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the “Bonds”), dated February 1, 2019, in the aggregate principal amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_. The Bonds are issuable in fully registered form only, in denominations of \$5,000 or integral multiples thereof, bear interest, are subject to redemption prior to maturity and may be transferred and exchanged as set out in the Bonds and in the order adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District authorizing their issuance (the “Order”).

WE HAVE ACTED as Bond Counsel for the sole purpose of rendering an opinion with respect to the legality and validity of the Bonds under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas and with respect to the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income under federal income tax law. In such capacity we have examined the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas; federal income tax law; and a transcript of certain certified proceedings pertaining to the issuance of the Bonds, as described in the Order. The transcript contains certified copies of certain proceedings of the District; certain certifications and representations and other material facts within the knowledge and control of the District, upon which we rely; and certain other customary documents and instruments authorizing and relating to the issuance of the Bonds. We have also examined executed Bond No. R-1.

WE HAVE NOT BEEN REQUESTED to examine, and have not investigated or verified, any original proceedings, records, data or other material, but have relied upon the transcript of certified proceedings. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the District or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. Our role in connection with the District’s Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

**BASED ON SUCH EXAMINATION, it is our opinion as follows:**

- (1) The transcript of certified proceedings evidences complete legal authority for the issuance of the Bonds in full compliance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas presently in effect; the Bonds constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the District enforceable in accordance with the terms and conditions thereof, except to the extent that the rights and



remedies of the owners of the Bonds may be limited by laws heretofore or hereafter enacted relating to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other similar laws affecting the rights of creditors of political subdivisions and the exercise of judicial discretion in appropriate cases; and the Bonds have been authorized and delivered in accordance with law; and

- (2) The Bonds are payable, both as to principal and interest, from the receipts of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon taxable property located within the District, which taxes have been pledged irrevocably to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds.

THE OPINIONS EXPRESSED herein are based on an analysis of existing laws, regulations, rulings and court decisions and cover certain matters not directly addressed by such authorities. Such opinions may be affected by actions taken or omitted or events occurring after the date hereof. We have not undertaken to determine, or to inform any person, whether any such actions are taken or omitted or events do occur or any other matters come to our attention after the date hereof. Accordingly, this opinion speaks only as of its date and is not intended to, and may not, be relied upon or otherwise used in connection with any such actions, events or matters. Our engagement with respect to the Bonds has concluded with their issuance, and we disclaim any obligation to update this letter. We have assumed the genuineness of all documents and signatures presented to us (whether as originals or as copies) and the due and legal execution and delivery thereof by, and validity against, any parties other than the District. We have assumed, without undertaking to verify, the accuracy of the factual matters represented, warranted or certified in the documents referred to in the second paragraph hereof. Furthermore, we have assumed compliance with all covenants and agreements contained in the Order and the Tax Certificate (as hereinafter defined) executed by the District in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, including, without limitation, covenants and agreements compliance with which is necessary to ensure that future actions, omissions or events will not cause interest on the Bonds to be included in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

ALSO BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, it is our further opinion that, subject to the restrictions hereinafter described, interest on the Bonds, including any accrued "original issue discount" properly allocable to the holders of the Bonds, is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended ("Code"), and is not a specific item of tax preference for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax. We express no opinion regarding other federal tax consequences arising with respect to the Bonds.

IN PROVIDING THE OPINION set forth in the foregoing paragraph, we are assuming continuing compliance with the Covenants (as hereinafter defined) by the District. The Code and the regulations promulgated thereunder contain a number of requirements that must be satisfied after the issuance of the Bonds in order for interest on the Bonds to be and remain excludable from gross income for purposes of federal income taxation. These requirements include, by way of example and not limitation, restrictions on the use, expenditure and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and the use of the property financed by the Bonds, limitations on the source of the payment of and the security for the Bonds, and the obligation to rebate certain excess earnings on the gross proceeds of the Bonds to the United States Treasury. The Order and the District's tax certificate for the Bonds (the "Tax Certificate") contain covenants (the "Covenants") under which the District has agreed to comply with such requirements. If the District fails to comply with the Covenants interest on the Bonds could become includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes retroactively to their date of issue. In the event of noncompliance with the Covenants, the available enforcement remedies may be limited by applicable provisions of law and, therefore, may not be adequate to prevent interest on the Bonds from becoming includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes. We have no responsibility to monitor compliance with the Covenants after the date of issue of the Bonds.

CERTAIN REQUIREMENTS AND PROCEDURES contained, incorporated or referred to in the Order and Tax Certificate, including the Covenants, may be changed and certain actions may be taken or omitted under the circumstances and subject to the terms and conditions set forth in such documents.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED ON EXISTING LAW, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

ORRICK, HERRINGTON & SUTCLIFFE LLP

**APPENDIX D**

**AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT  
SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**By: Lott, Vernon & Company, P.C.**  
20 South 4<sup>th</sup> Street  
Temple, Texas 76501  
Telephone: 254-778-4783



# MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|   | <u>Page</u> | <u>Exhibit</u> |
|---|-------------|----------------|
| INTRODUCTORY SECTION  |             |                |
| Certificate of Board  | 5           |                |
| FINANCIAL SECTION   |             |                |
| Independent Auditors' Report  | 9           |                |
| Management's Discussion and Analysis  | 13          |                |
| <b><u>Basic Financial Statements</u></b>                                    |             |                |
| Government Wide Financial Statements:                                       |             |                |
| Statement of Net Position   | 25          | A-1            |
| Statement of Activities   | 26          | B-1            |
| Governmental Fund Financial Statements:                                     |             |                |
| Balance Sheet — Governmental Funds  | 29          | C-1            |
| Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds                                    |             |                |
| Balance Sheet to the Statement of Net Position                              | 30          | C-2            |
| Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in                         |             |                |
| Fund Balances — Governmental Funds  | 32          | C-3            |
| Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in    |             |                |
| Fund Balances to the Statement of Activities                                | 33          | C-4            |
| Statement of Fiduciary Net Position - Fiduciary Funds                       | 34          | E-1            |
| Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Fund Net Position - Fiduciary Funds       | 35          | E-2            |
| Notes to the Financial Statements   | 36          |                |
| <b><u>Required Supplementary Information</u></b>                            |             |                |
| Budgetary Comparison Schedules:   |             |                |
| General Fund  | 75          | G-1            |
| Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the                       |             |                |
| Net Pension Liability (TRS)   | 76          | G-2            |
| Schedule of District Contributions for Pensions (TRS)                       | 77          | G-3            |
| Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the                       |             |                |
| Net OPEB Liability (TRS)  | 78          | G-4            |
| Schedule of District Contributions for Other Post Employment Benefits (TRS) | 79          | G-5            |
| Notes to Required Supplementary Information                                 | 80          |                |
| <b><u>Combining Schedules</u></b>   |             |                |
| Nonmajor Governmental Funds:  |             |                |
| Combining Balance Sheet   | 84          | H-1            |
| Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes                  |             |                |
| in Fund Balances  | 90          | H-2            |

## TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

|   | <u>Page</u> | <u>Exhibit</u> |
|---|-------------|----------------|
| <br><b><u>Required TEA Schedules</u></b>  |             |                |
| Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable   | 96          | J-1            |
| Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance - Budget and Actual - Child Nutrition Program  | 98          | J-2            |
| Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance - Budget and Actual - Debt Service Fund  | 99          | J-3            |
| <br><b><u>Federal Awards Section</u></b>  |             |                |
| Independent Auditor's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i> | 103         |                |
| Independent Auditor's Report on Compliance for Each Major Program and on Internal Control over Compliance Required by Uniform Guidance  | 105         |                |
| Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs   | 107         |                |
| Schedule of Prior Audit Findings and Corrective Action Plan   | 108         |                |
| Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards  | 109         | K-1            |
| Notes to Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards   | 110         |                |
| Schedule of Required Responses to Selected School First Indicators  | 111         | K-2            |

## Introductory Section



This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Marble Falls Independent School District  
Name of School District

Burnet  
County

027-904  
Co.-Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above-named school district were reviewed and (check one) ☒ approved ☐ disapproved for the year ended June 30, 2018, at a meeting of the Board of Trustees of such school district on the 15<sup>th</sup> day of October, 2018.



Signature of Board Secretary



Signature of Board President

If the Board of Trustees disapproved of the auditors' report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is (are):

(attach list as necessary)

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

## Financial Section

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.



**LOTT, VERNON & COMPANY, P.C.**  
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

20 SOUTH FOURTH STREET 254/778/4783  
POST OFFICE BOX 160 800/460/4783  
TEMPLE, TEXAS 76503 FAX 254/778/4792

KILLEEN • COPPERAS COVE • TEMPLE

*Member of  
American Institute & Texas Society of  
Certified Public Accountants*

**Independent Auditors' Report**

Board of Trustees  
Marble Falls Independent School District  
Marble Falls, Texas

Members of the Board:

**Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund and the aggregate remaining fund information of Marble Falls Independent School District (the District) as of and for the year ended June 30, 2018, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

**Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements**

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

**Auditor's Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

## Opinions

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund and the aggregate remaining fund information of Marble Falls Independent School District as of June 30, 2018, and the respective changes in financial position for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

## Other Matters

### *Required Supplementary Information*

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the management's discussion and analysis on pages 13 through 19, the budgetary comparison schedules and the TRS Schedules on pages 75 through 80 be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

### *Other Information*

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the required TEA schedules are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements. The accompanying schedule of expenditures of federal awards is presented for purposes of additional analysis as required by Title 2 U.S. *Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards*, and is also not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

The Texas Education Agency requires school districts to include certain information in the Annual Financial Report in conformity with laws and regulations of the State of Texas. This information is in Exhibits identified in the Table of Contents as J-1, J-2 and J-3. These schedules have been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, in our opinion, are fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole.

### **Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards***

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated September 21, 2018, on our consideration of the District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Jett, Vernon & Co., P.C." The signature is written in a cursive, flowing style.

Temple, Texas  
September 21, 2018



This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

## Marble Falls Independent School District MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

This section of Marble Falls Independent School District's annual financial report presents our discussion and analysis of the District's financial performance during the fiscal year ended June 30, 2018. Please read it in conjunction with the District's financial statements, which follow this section.

### FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

- The District's total combined net position was \$17.7 million at June 30, 2018, compared to \$36.6 million at June 30, 2017 (see Table A-1).
- The District has assigned \$1,856,909 of the general fund balance for the completion of a new transportation facility. The total cost of the project is approximately \$2,621,405

### OVERVIEW OF THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

This annual report consists of a series of financial statements. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities (on pages 25 and 26). These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise. Fund financial statements (starting on page 29) report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources, and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the district.

The notes to the financial statements (starting on page 36) provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The sections labeled TEA Required Schedules and Federal Awards Section contain data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of grants.

### Reporting the District as a Whole

#### Government-Wide Statements

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities are considered to be government-wide statements. The government-wide statements report information about the District as a whole using the accrual basis of accounting. This method of accounting is used by private-sector companies. The statement of net position includes *all* of the government's assets, deferred outflows, liabilities and deferred inflows. The District's assets and liabilities are reported whether they serve current year or future years. All of the current year's revenues and expenses are accounted for in the statement of activities regardless of when cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties who share the costs of some programs, such as grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by Texas Education Agency (general revenues).

The two government-wide statements report the District's net position and how it has changed. Net position—the difference between the District's assets and deferred outflows of resources less liabilities

and deferred inflows of resources—is one way to measure the District’s financial health or position.

- Over time, increases or decreases in the District’s net position are indicators of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating, respectively.
- To assess the overall health of the District, you need to consider additional nonfinancial factors such as changes in the District’s average daily attendance, property tax base and the condition of school buildings and other facilities.

The government-wide financial statements of the District are described as follows:

- *Governmental activities* - Most of the District’s basic services are included here, such as instruction, transportation, extracurricular activities, curriculum and staff development, health services, and general administration. Property taxes, state funding and federal grants finance most of these activities.

## **Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds**

### **Fund Financial Statements**

The fund financial statements provide more detailed information about the District’s most significant *funds*—not the District as a whole. Funds are accounting devices that the District uses to keep track of specific sources of funding and spending for particular purposes. Some funds are required by State law and by bond covenants. The Board of Trustees establishes other funds to control and manage money for particular purposes or to show that it is properly using certain revenues.

The District has two kinds of funds:

- *Governmental funds*—Most of the District’s basic services are included in governmental funds, which focus on (1) how *cash and other financial assets* that can readily be converted to cash flow in and out and (2) the balances left at year-end that are available for spending. Consequently, the governmental fund statements provide a detailed *short-term* view that helps you determine whether there are more or fewer financial resources that can be spent in the near future to finance the District’s programs. Because this information does not encompass the additional long-term focus of the government-wide statements, we provide additional information at the bottom of the governmental funds statement, or on the subsequent page, that explain the relationship (or differences) between them.
- *Fiduciary funds*—The District is the trustee, or *fiduciary*, for assets that belong to others, such as the scholarship fund and the student activities funds. The District is responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used only for their intended purposes and by those to whom the assets belong. We exclude these activities from the government-wide financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. All of the District’s fiduciary activities are reported in the Statement of Fiduciary Net Position and the Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Fund Net Position on pages 34-35.

## FINANCIAL ANALYSIS OF THE DISTRICT AS A WHOLE

Our analysis focuses on the net position (Table I) and changes in net position (Table II) of the District's governmental and business-type activities.

Net position – The District's governmental activities decreased \$18.8 million from the previous fiscal year. Unrestricted net position - the part of net position that can be used to finance day-to-day operations without constraints established by debt covenants, enabling legislation, or other legal requirements, was \$(14) million at June 30, 2018. This decrease in governmental net position was the result of implementing GASB 75 – Net OPEB Liability and GASB 68 – Net Pension Liability for the District's proportion of the unfunded liability of the TRS Pension and Post Retirement Benefits. Otherwise, the District experienced an increase of \$9.3 million increase due to a combination of increased revenues and lower expenses.

**Table I**  
**Marble Falls Independent School District**

### NET POSITION In thousands

|   | Governmental<br>Activities<br>2018 | Governmental<br>Activities<br>2017 |
|---|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Current and other assets                            | \$ 30,710                          | \$ 29,406                          |
| Capital assets                                      | 87,580                             | 89,208                             |
| Deferred outflows of resources                      | 9,527                              | 3,323                              |
| Total assets and deferred outflows of resources     | 127,817                            | 121,937                            |
| Other liabilities                                   | 11,509                             | 8,840                              |
| Long-term liabilities                               | 90,809                             | 75,999                             |
| Deferred inflows of resources                       | 7,777                              | 534                                |
| Total liabilities and deferred inflows of resources | 110,095                            | 85,373                             |
| Net Positions:                                      |                                    |                                    |
| Invested in capital assets net of related debt      | 22,122                             | 20,229                             |
| Restricted  | 9,539                              | 7,454                              |
| Unrestricted  | (13,939)                           | 8,881                              |
| Total net positions                                 | \$ 17,722                          | \$ 36,564                          |

**Table II**  
**Marble Falls Independent School District**

**CHANGES IN NET POSITION**  
**In thousands**

|  | Governmental<br>Activities<br>2018 | Governmental<br>Activities<br>2017 |
|--|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Revenues:  |                                    |                                    |
| Program Revenues   |                                    |                                    |
| Charges for services   | \$ 1,281                           | \$ 890                             |
| Operating grants and contributions                               | (219)                              | 5,488                              |
| General Revenues:  |                                    |                                    |
| Maintenance and operations taxes                                 | 36,193                             | 34,780                             |
| Debt service taxes   | 7,755                              | 7,561                              |
| State aid - formula grants                                       | 10,600                             | 6,420                              |
| Grants and contributions not restricted<br>to specific functions | -                                  | -                                  |
| Investment earnings  | 411                                | 191                                |
| Miscellaneous  | 1,690                              | 447                                |
| Total Revenues   | <u>57,711</u>                      | <u>55,777</u>                      |
| Expenses:  |                                    |                                    |
| Instruction, curriculum and media services                       | 22,705                             | 26,854                             |
| Instruction and school leadership                                | 3,193                              | 3,659                              |
| Student support services   | 3,372                              | 3,499                              |
| Child nutrition  | 2,419                              | 2,522                              |
| Cocurricular activities  | 1,460                              | 1,828                              |
| General administration   | 1,423                              | 1,539                              |
| Plant maintenance, security, and data processing                 | 6,801                              | 6,769                              |
| Community services   | 76                                 | 111                                |
| Debt services - interest & bond fees                             | 1,518                              | (3,097)                            |
| Contracted Instructional Services between Schools                | 4,901                              | 3,369                              |
| Payments to other districts/increment                            | 673                                | 739                                |
| Other intergovernmental charges                                  | 680                                | 635                                |
| Total Expenses   | <u>49,221</u>                      | <u>48,427</u>                      |
| Transfers out  | -                                  | -                                  |
| Change in net positions  | 8,490                              | 7,350                              |
| Net positions at beginning                                       | 36,564                             | 29,214                             |
| Prior period adjustment  | (27,332)                           | -                                  |
| Net positions at ending  | <u>\$ 17,722</u>                   | <u>\$ 36,564</u>                   |

## **NET PENSION LIABILITY (GASB 68)**

During fiscal year 2015, the District adopted GASB Statement No. 68 for Accounting and Reporting for Pensions. With GASB 68, the District must assume their proportionate share of the Net Pension Liability of the Teacher Retirement System. The District's net pension liability at year end totaled \$7.7 million.

## **NET OPEB LIABILITY (GASB 75)**

During fiscal year 2018, the District adopted GASB Statement No. 75 for Accounting and Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions (OPEB). With GASB 75, the District must assume their proportionate share of the Net OPEB Liability of the Teacher Retirement System which at year end totaled \$15.6 million.

## **General Fund Budgetary Highlights**

The District's governmental funds (page 29) reported a combined fund balance of \$23.3 million, which is \$.6 million more than the prior year's total of \$22.7 million. Included in this year's total change in fund balance is a decrease of \$.9 million in the District's General Fund for the construction of a transportation facility and technology leases. The Debt Service fund balance increased \$2.1 million due to property tax increases. Capital Projects fund balances decreased \$.5 million for the construction of a transportation facility, the remainder will be paid from general fund, and baseball field renovations. Lastly, School Nutrition fund balance decreased an additional \$.1 million as a result of decreased revenues.

Budget amendments are presented to the Board of Trustees at regularly scheduled meetings. Each budget amendment must be approved by the Board and reflected in the official minutes of the Board before overspending in any functional category.

Additional budget considerations were approved during the year to amend the original budget. These additional considerations included the following:

- Supplemental appropriations and amendments approved after the beginning of the year to revise the budget from estimated adopted amounts resulting from the unavailability of certified property values at June 30, 2017.
- \$123,100 for the purchase and installation of a high school PA System.
- \$657,196 in technology leases not originally in the budget
- Decreases in State funding and increases in recapture for changes in average daily attendance.

## **CAPITAL ASSET AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION**

### **Capital Assets**

As of June 30, 2018, the District had invested approximately \$87.6 million in a broad range of capital assets, including land, equipment, buildings, and vehicles. (See Table III.) This amount represents a net decrease (including additions and deductions) of \$1.6 million primarily to due to depreciation under last year. More detailed information about the district's capital assets activity is presented in Note D of the Notes to the Financial Statements.

**Table III**  
**Marble Falls Independent School District**

| <b>Capital Assets</b><br>in thousands |                                |                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
|                                       | <u>Governmental Activities</u> |                      |
|                                       | <u>2018</u>                    | <u>2017</u>          |
| Land                                  | \$ 4,132                       | \$ 3,838             |
| Buildings and Improvements            | 120,030                        | 119,997              |
| Furniture and Equipment               | 10,430                         | 9,789                |
| Construction in Progress              | 1,071                          | 52                   |
| Total at Historical Cost              | <u>135,663</u>                 | <u>133,676</u>       |
| <br>Total Accumulated Depreciation    | <br>(48,083)                   | <br>(44,468)         |
| <br>Net Capital Assets                | <br><u>\$ 87,580</u>           | <br><u>\$ 89,208</u> |

### **Long-Term Debt**

The District had \$60.1 million in bonds outstanding versus \$63.3 million last year. At June 30, 2018 the District requires \$96,853,306 (including principal, interest due and accreted interest) through 2037 to retire all of its outstanding general long-term bonds. The debt service fund currently has \$9,348,245 restricted in fund balance for the retirement of this indebtedness.

The District levied a debt service tax rate of \$0.2253 during the 2017-2018 fiscal year to fund a portion of the principal and interest payments on bonded indebtedness. The District's debt service is primarily paid by local tax revenues in the form of property taxes and investment earnings. More detailed information about the District's debt is presented in Note H of the Notes to the Financial Statements.

### **ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND TAX RATES**

The District foresees stable growth in student enrollment for fiscal year 2019.

There is a lot of uncertainty in the area of school finance at both the state and federal levels especially as it relates to school finance reform at the state level. At the local level, property values continue to increase at significant rates. The District experienced an 11.8% increase in taxable property values, thus increasing local tax revenues. Consequently, recapture paid back to the State, for that increase in values, is increasing also, minimizing the impact the increase in tax revenues would have on funding.

The District maintains a healthy fund balance both for operational and debt purposes. The Board approved the maintenance and operations tax rate for the 2018-2019 fiscal year of \$1.0533 and a debt service rate of \$0.2153 for a total of \$1.2686.

## **CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, investors, and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to show the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's business office, at Marble Falls Independent School District, 1800 Colt Circle, Marble Falls, Texas 78654.



This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

## Basic Financial Statements

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

## Government Wide Financial Statements

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
JUNE 30, 2018

EXHIBIT A-1

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes       |  | Primary Government         |
|--------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
|                                |  | Governmental<br>Activities |
| ASSETS                         |  |                            |
| 1110                           | Cash and Cash Equivalents                | \$ 2,029,049               |
| 1120                           | Current Investments                      | 24,975,323                 |
| 1220                           | Property Taxes Receivable (Delinquent)   | 2,171,435                  |
| 1230                           | Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes        | (238,858)                  |
| 1240                           | Due from Other Governments               | 1,578,184                  |
| 1290                           | Other Receivables, net                   | 500                        |
| 1300                           | Inventories                              | 135,550                    |
| 1410                           | Prepayments                              | 59,194                     |
|                                | Capital Assets:                          |                            |
| 1510                           | Land                                     | 4,131,685                  |
| 1520                           | Buildings, Net                           | 79,039,207                 |
| 1530                           | Furniture and Equipment, Net             | 3,337,750                  |
| 1580                           | Construction in Progress                 | 1,071,302                  |
| 1000                           | Total Assets                             | 118,290,321                |
| DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES |  |                            |
| 1701                           | Deferred Charge for Refunding            | 6,962,342                  |
| 1705                           | Deferred Outflow Related to TRS Pension  | 2,356,855                  |
| 1706                           | Deferred Outflow Related to TRS OPEB     | 207,700                    |
| 1700                           | Total Deferred Outflows of Resources     | 9,526,897                  |
| LIABILITIES                    |  |                            |
| 2110                           | Accounts Payable                         | 560,981                    |
| 2120                           | Short Term Debt Payable                  | 17,382                     |
| 2140                           | Interest Payable                         | 768,587                    |
| 2150                           | Payroll Deductions & Withholdings        | 116,772                    |
| 2160                           | Accrued Wages Payable                    | 3,271,698                  |
| 2180                           | Due to Other Governments                 | 1,494,094                  |
| 2300                           | Unearned Revenue                         | 3,680                      |
|                                | Noncurrent Liabilities                   |                            |
| 2501                           | Due Within One Year                      | 5,275,315                  |
| 2502                           | Due in More Than One Year                | 67,491,748                 |
| 2540                           | Net Pension Liability (District's Share) | 7,747,371                  |
| 2545                           | Net OPEB Liability (District's Share)    | 15,570,285                 |
| 2000                           | Total Liabilities                        | 102,317,913                |
| DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES  |  |                            |
| 2605                           | Deferred Inflow Related to TRS Pension   | 1,264,038                  |
| 2606                           | Deferred Inflow Related to TRS OPEB      | 6,513,080                  |
| 2600                           | Total Deferred Inflows of Resources      | 7,777,118                  |
| NET POSITION                   |  |                            |
| 3200                           | Net Investment in Capital Assets         | 22,122,569                 |
| 3850                           | Restricted for Debt Service              | 9,348,245                  |
| 3870                           | Restricted for Campus Activities         | 190,536                    |
| 3900                           | Unrestricted                             | (13,939,163)               |
| 3000                           | Total Net Position                       | \$ 17,722,187              |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

EXHIBIT B-1

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes                             | i             | Program Revenues        |  | Net (Expense)<br>Revenue and<br>Changes in Net<br>Position |
|--|---------------|-------------------------|--|--|
|  |               | 3                       | 4  |  |
|  |               | Charges for<br>Services | Operating<br>Grants and<br>Contributions |  |
|  | Expenses      |                         |  | 6<br>Primary Gov.<br>Governmental<br>Activities            |
| <b>Primary Government:</b>                           |               |                         |  |  |
| GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES:                             |               |                         |  |  |
| 11 Instruction                                       | \$ 21,651,037 | \$ 262,075              | \$ (999,564)                             | \$ (22,388,526)  |
| 12 Instructional Resources and Media Services        | 492,568       | -                       | (61,256)                                 | (553,824)  |
| 13 Curriculum and Staff Development                  | 561,059       | -                       | 280,144                                  | (280,915)  |
| 21 Instructional Leadership                          | 1,047,175     | -                       | (19,098)                                 | (1,066,273)  |
| 23 School Leadership                                 | 2,145,813     | -                       | (362,659)                                | (2,508,472)  |
| 31 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services      | 1,119,201     | -                       | (191,066)                                | (1,310,267)  |
| 32 Social Work Services                              | 54,606        | -                       | (8,627)                                  | (63,233)   |
| 33 Health Services                                   | 383,687       | -                       | (81,949)                                 | (465,636)  |
| 34 Student (Pupil) Transportation                    | 1,814,230     | -                       | (227,707)                                | (2,041,937)  |
| 35 Food Services                                     | 2,419,190     | 659,250                 | 1,770,699                                | 10,759   |
| 36 Extracurricular Activities                        | 1,460,262     | 134,503                 | (123,429)                                | (1,449,188)  |
| 41 General Administration                            | 1,423,509     | -                       | (181,751)                                | (1,605,260)  |
| 51 Facilities Maintenance and Operations             | 4,733,965     | 187,827                 | (539,017)                                | (5,085,155)  |
| 52 Security and Monitoring Services                  | 126,426       | -                       | (12,752)                                 | (139,178)  |
| 53 Data Processing Services                          | 1,940,674     | -                       | (134,619)                                | (2,075,293)  |
| 61 Community Services                                | 75,645        | 37,006                  | 1,009                                    | (37,630)   |
| 72 Debt Service - Interest on Long Term Debt         | 1,513,500     | -                       | -  | (1,513,500)  |
| 73 Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees        | 4,500         | -                       | -  | (4,500)  |
| 91 Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools | 4,901,452     | -                       | -  | (4,901,452)  |
| 93 Payments related to Shared Services Arrangements  | 672,941       | -                       | 672,941                                  | -  |
| 99 Other Intergovernmental Charges                   | 679,971       | -                       | -  | (679,971)  |
| [TP] TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:                       | \$ 49,221,411 | \$ 1,280,661            | \$ (218,701)                             | (48,159,451)   |

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes |  |  |               |
|--------------------------|--|--|---------------|
|                          |  |  |               |
|                          |  |  |               |
|                          | General Revenues:                            |  |               |
|                          | Taxes:                                       |  |               |
| MT                       | Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes  |  | 36,192,937    |
| DT                       | Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service      |  | 7,754,477     |
| SF                       | State Aid - Formula Grants                   |  | 2,636,765     |
| GC                       | Grants and Contributions not Restricted      |  | 7,963,362     |
| IE                       | Investment Earnings                          |  | 411,445       |
| MI                       | Miscellaneous Local and Intermediate Revenue |  | 1,690,416     |
| TR                       | Total General Revenues                       |  | 56,649,402    |
| CN                       | Change in Net Position                       |  | 8,489,951     |
| NB                       | Net Position - Beginning                     |  | 36,564,464    |
| PA                       | Prior Period Adjustment (See note Q)         |  | (27,332,228)  |
| NE                       | Net Position--Ending                         |  | \$ 17,722,187 |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

## Governmental Fund Financial Statements



This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
BALANCE SHEET  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes                                 | 10<br>General<br>Fund | 50<br>Debt Service<br>Fund | Other<br>Governmental<br>Funds | Total<br>Governmental<br>Funds |
|--|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>ASSETS</b>  |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents                           | \$ 985,790            | \$ 3,760                   | \$ 1,039,499                   | \$ 2,029,049                   |
| 1120 Investments - Current                               | 15,687,100            | 9,288,223                  | -                              | 24,975,323                     |
| 1220 Property Taxes - Delinquent                         | 1,780,450             | 390,985                    | -                              | 2,171,435                      |
| 1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes (Credit)          | (195,850)             | (43,008)                   | -                              | (238,858)                      |
| 1240 Receivables from Other Governments                  | 772,793               | 56,262                     | 749,129                        | 1,578,184                      |
| 1260 Due from Other Funds                                | 462,899               | -                          | 54,638                         | 517,537                        |
| 1290 Other Receivables                                   | 500                   | -                          | -                              | 500                            |
| 1300 Inventories   | 86,279                | -                          | 49,271                         | 135,550                        |
| 1410 Prepayments   | 59,194                | -                          | -                              | 59,194                         |
| 1000 Total Assets  | <u>\$ 19,639,155</u>  | <u>\$ 9,696,222</u>        | <u>\$ 1,892,537</u>            | <u>\$ 31,227,914</u>           |
| <b>LIABILITIES</b>                                       |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 2110 Accounts Payable                                    | \$ 257,844            | \$ -                       | \$ 303,137                     | \$ 560,981                     |
| 2120 Short Term Debt Payable - Current                   | 16,184                | -                          | 1,198                          | 17,382                         |
| 2150 Payroll Deductions and Withholdings Payable         | 97,971                | -                          | 18,801                         | 116,772                        |
| 2160 Accrued Wages Payable                               | 3,050,025             | -                          | 221,673                        | 3,271,698                      |
| 2170 Due to Other Funds                                  | 17,725                | -                          | 499,812                        | 517,537                        |
| 2180 Due to Other Governments                            | 1,493,348             | -                          | 746                            | 1,494,094                      |
| 2300 Unearned Revenues                                   | -                     | -                          | 3,680                          | 3,680                          |
| 2000 Total Liabilities                                   | <u>4,933,097</u>      | <u>-</u>                   | <u>1,049,047</u>               | <u>5,982,144</u>               |
| <b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>                     |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 2601 Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes                | 1,584,600             | 347,977                    | -                              | 1,932,577                      |
| 2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources                 | <u>1,584,600</u>      | <u>347,977</u>             | <u>-</u>                       | <u>1,932,577</u>               |
| <b>FUND BALANCES</b>                                     |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| Nonspendable Fund Balance:                               |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 3410 Inventories   | 86,279                | -                          | 49,271                         | 135,550                        |
| 3430 Prepaid Items                                       | 59,194                | -                          | -                              | 59,194                         |
| Restricted Fund Balance:                                 |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 3450 Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction            | -                     | -                          | 522,359                        | 522,359                        |
| 3470 Capital Acquisition and Contractual Obligation      | -                     | -                          | 79,574                         | 79,574                         |
| 3480 Retirement of Long-Term Debt                        | -                     | 9,348,245                  | -                              | 9,348,245                      |
| 3490 Other Restricted Fund Balance                       | -                     | -                          | 1,750                          | 1,750                          |
| Committed Fund Balance:                                  |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 3545 Other Committed Fund Balance                        | -                     | -                          | 190,536                        | 190,536                        |
| Assigned Fund Balance:                                   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 3550 Construction  | 1,856,909             | -                          | -                              | 1,856,909                      |
| 3600 Unassigned Fund Balance                             | 11,119,076            | -                          | -                              | 11,119,076                     |
| 3000 Total Fund Balances                                 | <u>13,121,458</u>     | <u>9,348,245</u>           | <u>843,490</u>                 | <u>23,313,193</u>              |
| 4000 Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows & Fund Balances | <u>\$ 19,639,155</u>  | <u>\$ 9,696,222</u>        | <u>\$ 1,892,537</u>            | <u>\$ 31,227,914</u>           |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET TO THE  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
JUNE 30, 2018

EXHIBIT C-2

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| <b>Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>   | <b>\$ 23,313,193</b> |
| 1 Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and therefore are not reported in governmental funds. At the beginning of the year, the cost of these assets were \$133,676,525 and the accumulated depreciation was \$44,468,678. The net effect of including the beginning balances for capital assets (net of depreciation) in the governmental activities is to increase net position. Note: Beginning Balances related to TRS are NOT included in this amount.  | 89,207,847           |
| 2 Current year capital outlays are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of including the 2018 capital outlays is to increase net position.  | 2,117,498            |
| 3 Current year retirements and adjustments are not recognized as an income or expense in the fund financial statements. The net effect of these recognitions and adjustments is to increase net position.   | 1,998                |
| 4 The 2018 depreciation expense increases accumulated depreciation. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.  | (3,747,399)          |
| 5 Long term debt (net of deferred amount on refunding & unamortized premium on bonds) issued by governmental activities is not a current liability and therefore not reported as long term debt on the Statement of Net Position. The net effect of recording the beginning of the year value of all long term debt outstanding is to decrease net position. Note: Beginning Balances related to TRS are NOT included in this amount.   | (70,814,845)         |
| 6 The District acquired two, three year capital leases that are shown as other financing sources in the fund financial statements. Current payments are viewed as expenditures in the governmental funds, but are treated as reductions of capital leases on the Statement of Net Position. The net effect of the new leases and current payments towards these leases is to decrease net position.   | (347,347)            |
| 7 Long term debt payments are expenditures in the governmental funds, but are treated as reductions of long term debt on the Statement of Net Position. The net effect of reducing long term debt is to increase net position.  | 4,588,884            |
| 8 Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68. At the beginning of the year, the net position related to TRS was a Deferred Resource Outflow in the amount of \$2,356,855, a Deferred Resource Inflow in the amount of \$1,264,038 and a net pension liability in the amount of \$7,747,371. The impact of this on Net Position is (6,654,554). Changes from the current year reporting of the TRS plan resulted in a decrease in net position in the amount of (\$192,075). The combination of the beginning of the year amounts and the changes during the year resulted in a difference between the ending fund balance and the ending net position in the amount of (\$6,654,554) . | (6,654,554)          |
| 9 Included in the items related to det is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability required by GASB 75 in the amount of \$15,570,285, a Deferred Resource Inflow related to TRS OPEB in the amount of \$207,700 and a Deferred Resource Outflow related to TRS OPEB in the amount of \$6,513,080. This   | (21,875,665)         |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET TO THE  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
JUNE 30, 2018

---

EXHIBIT C-2

amounted to a decrease in net position.

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>10</b> Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to increase net position. | 1,932,577 |
|---|-----------|

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| <b>19 Net Position of Governmental Activities</b> | <u>\$ 17,722,187</u> |
|---|----------------------|

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

EXHIBIT C-3

| Data Control Codes                     |   | 10<br>General<br>Fund | 50<br>Debt Service<br>Fund | Other<br>Governmental<br>Funds | Total<br>Governmental<br>Funds |
|--|---|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>REVENUES:</b>                       |   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 5700                                   | Total Local and Intermediate Sources                      | \$ 38,352,045         | \$ 8,147,168               | \$ 868,643                     | \$ 47,367,856                  |
| 5800                                   | State Program Revenues                                    | 4,539,255             | 115,381                    | 74,623                         | 4,729,259                      |
| 5900                                   | Federal Program Revenues                                  | 769,113               | -                          | 5,521,072                      | 6,290,185                      |
| 5020                                   | Total Revenues  | 43,660,413            | 8,262,549                  | 6,464,338                      | 58,387,300                     |
| <b>EXPENDITURES:</b>                   |   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| Current:                               |   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 0011                                   | Instruction   | 20,666,735            | -                          | 2,752,378                      | 23,419,113                     |
| 0012                                   | Instructional Resources and Media Services                | 443,995               | -                          | 54,368                         | 498,363                        |
| 0013                                   | Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development            | 343,145               | -                          | 312,468                        | 655,613                        |
| 0021                                   | Instructional Leadership                                  | 1,026,081             | -                          | 148,014                        | 1,174,095                      |
| 0023                                   | School Leadership   | 2,275,630             | -                          | 22,140                         | 2,297,770                      |
| 0031                                   | Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services              | 1,160,548             | -                          | 8,344                          | 1,168,892                      |
| 0032                                   | Social Work Services                                      | 63,450                | -                          | -                              | 63,450                         |
| 0033                                   | Health Services   | 394,064               | -                          | 9,868                          | 403,932                        |
| 0034                                   | Student (Pupil) Transportation                            | 2,026,938             | -                          | 67,778                         | 2,094,716                      |
| 0035                                   | Food Services   | -                     | -                          | 2,524,958                      | 2,524,958                      |
| 0036                                   | Extracurricular Activities                                | 1,571,791             | -                          | 299,529                        | 1,871,320                      |
| 0041                                   | General Administration                                    | 1,478,107             | -                          | 2,025                          | 1,480,132                      |
| 0051                                   | Facilities Maintenance and Operations                     | 4,834,320             | -                          | 251,293                        | 5,085,613                      |
| 0052                                   | Security and Monitoring Services                          | 132,213               | -                          | 3,598                          | 135,811                        |
| 0053                                   | Data Processing Services                                  | 2,023,316             | -                          | -                              | 2,023,316                      |
| 0061                                   | Community Services  | 41,498                | -                          | 9,716                          | 51,214                         |
| Debt Service:                          |   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 0071                                   | Principal on Long Term Debt                               | 184,034               | 3,169,544                  | -                              | 3,353,578                      |
| 0072                                   | Interest on Long Term Debt                                | -                     | 2,951,099                  | -                              | 2,951,099                      |
| 0073                                   | Bond Issuance Cost and Fees                               | -                     | 4,500                      | -                              | 4,500                          |
| Capital Outlay:                        |   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 0081                                   | Facilities Acquisition and Construction                   | -                     | -                          | 775,342                        | 775,342                        |
| Intergovernmental:                     |   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 0091                                   | Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools         | 4,901,452             | -                          | -                              | 4,901,452                      |
| 0093                                   | Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA          | -                     | -                          | 672,941                        | 672,941                        |
| 0099                                   | Other Intergovernmental Charges                           | 679,971               | -                          | -                              | 679,971                        |
| 6030                                   | Total Expenditures  | 44,247,288            | 6,125,143                  | 7,914,760                      | 58,287,191                     |
| 1100                                   | Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures | (586,875)             | 2,137,406                  | (1,450,422)                    | 100,109                        |
| <b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b> |   |                       |                            |                                |                                |
| 7912                                   | Sale of Real and Personal Property                        | 1,875                 | -                          | -                              | 1,875                          |
| 7913                                   | Capital Leases  | 549,640               | -                          | -                              | 549,640                        |
| 7915                                   | Transfers In  | -                     | -                          | 1,028,981                      | 1,028,981                      |
| 8911                                   | Transfers Out (Use)                                       | (824,141)             | -                          | (204,840)                      | (1,028,981)                    |
| 7080                                   | Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)                      | (272,626)             | -                          | 824,141                        | 551,515                        |
| 1200                                   | Net Change in Fund Balances                               | (859,501)             | 2,137,406                  | (626,281)                      | 651,624                        |
| 0100                                   | Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)                         | 13,980,959            | 7,210,839                  | 1,469,771                      | 22,661,569                     |
| 3000                                   | Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)                           | \$ 13,121,458         | \$ 9,348,245               | \$ 843,490                     | \$ 23,313,193                  |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,  
AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

EXHIBIT C-4

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <b>Total Net Change in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>  | <b>\$ 651,624</b>   |
| Current year capital outlays are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of removing the 2018 capital outlays is to increase net position.  | 2,117,498           |
| Depreciation is not recognized as an expense in governmental funds since it does not require the use of current financial resources. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.  | (3,747,399)         |
| Current year retirements and adjustments are not recognized as an income or expense in the fund financial statements. The net effect of these recognitions and adjustments is to decrease net position.  | (1,998)             |
| Current year long-term debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of removing the 2018 debt principal payments is to increase net position.   | 4,588,884           |
| The District acquired two, three year capital leases. Current payments are viewed as expenditures in the governmental funds, but are treated as reductions of capital leases on the Statement of Net Position. The net effect is to decrease net position.   | (347,347)           |
| Current year changes due to GASB 68 decreased revenues in the amount of \$330,123 and decreased expenditures in the amount of \$138,048. The net effect on the change in the ending net position was a decrease.   | (192,075)           |
| The implementation of GASB 75 required that certain expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource inflows and outflows. The contributions made after the measurement date and de-expensing caused the change in the ending net position to increase net position.  | 5,456,563           |
| Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue and adjusting current year revenue to show the revenue earned from the current year's tax levy. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to decrease net position. | (35,799)            |
| <b>Change in Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>   | <b>\$ 8,489,951</b> |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION  
FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
JUNE 30, 2018

|                               | Private<br>Purpose<br>Trust Fund | Agency<br>Fund    |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ASSETS</b>                 |                                  |                   |
| Cash and Cash Equivalents     | \$ 25,570                        | \$ 296,655        |
| Total Assets                  | <u>25,570</u>                    | <u>\$ 296,655</u> |
| <b>LIABILITIES</b>            |                                  |                   |
| Accounts Payable              | -                                | \$ 3,018          |
| Due to Student Groups         | -                                | 293,637           |
| Total Liabilities             | <u>-</u>                         | <u>\$ 296,655</u> |
| <b>NET POSITION</b>           |                                  |                   |
| Restricted for Other Purposes | <u>25,570</u>                    |                   |
| Total Net Position            | <u>\$ 25,570</u>                 |                   |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN FIDUCIARY FUND NET POSITION  
FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

|   | Private<br>Purpose<br>Trust Fund |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Change in Net Position                  | -                                |
| Total Net Position - July 1 (Beginning) | <u>25,570</u>                    |
| Total Net Position - June 30 (Ending)   | <u>\$ 25,570</u>                 |

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.



**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

A. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

The basic financial statements of Marble Falls Independent School District (the "District") have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") applicable to governmental units in conjunction with the Texas Education Agency's Financial Accountability System Resource Guide ("Resource Guide"). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles.

1. Reporting Entity

The Board of School Trustees ("Board"), a seven-member group, has governance responsibilities over all activities related to public elementary and secondary education within the jurisdiction of the District. The Board is elected by the public and has the exclusive power and duty to govern and oversee the management of the public schools of the District. All powers and duties not specifically delegated by statute to the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") or to the State Board of Education are reserved for the Board, and the TEA may not substitute its judgment for the lawful exercise of those powers and duties by the Board. The District receives funding from local, state and federal government sources and must comply with the requirements of those funding entities. However, the District is not included in any other governmental reporting entity and there are no component units included within the District's reporting entity.

2. Measurement Focus, Financial Statement Presentation, and Basis of Accounting

a. Financial Statement Presentation

Government-wide Financial Statements: The statement of net position and the statement of activities include the financial activities of the overall government, except for fiduciary activities. Eliminations have been made to minimize the double-counting of internal activities. Governmental activities generally are financed through taxes, intergovernmental revenues, and other nonexchange transactions.

The statement of activities presents a comparison between direct expenses and program revenues for each function of the District's governmental activities. Direct expenses are those that are specifically associated with a program or function and, therefore, are clearly identifiable to a particular function. The District does not allocate indirect expenses in the statement of activities. Program revenues include (a) fees, fines, and charges paid by the recipients of goods or services offered by the programs and (b) grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular program. Revenues that are not classified as program revenues, including all taxes, are presented as general revenues.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Fund Financial Statements: The fund financial statements provide information about the District's funds, with separate statements presented for each fund category. The emphasis of fund financial statements is on major governmental funds, each displayed in a separate column. All remaining governmental funds are aggregated and reported as nonmajor funds.

The District reports the following major governmental funds:

General Fund: This is the District's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources of the District except those required to be accounted for in another fund.

Debt Service Fund – Accounts for resources accumulated and payments made for principal and interest on long-term general obligation debt of governmental funds. This is a budgeted fund.

In addition, the District reports the following fund types:

Special Revenue Funds – Accounts for resources to, or designated for, specific purposes by the District or a grantor. Most Federal and some State financial assistance is accounted for a Special Revenue Fund and sometimes unused balances must be returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods. The National Breakfast and Lunch Program fund is the only required budgeted special revenue fund. For all other funds in this type, project accounting is employed to maintain integrity for the various sources of funds. The following is a list of non-major Special Revenue funds used by the district:

Title I – Improving Basic Programs – funds allocated to improve the teaching of children who are at risk of not meeting challenging academic standards and who reside in areas with high concentrations of children from low-income families.

IDEA B Formula – funds granted on a project basis, to operate educational programs for children with disabilities.

IDEA B Preschool – funds granted on a project basis, for preschool children with disabilities.

IDEA B Discretionary High Cost – funds allocated to provide educational services to eligible students with disabilities whose individual educational needs require additional costs beyond that of their peers.

National Breakfast and Lunch Program – funds granted by the National School Lunch Program, the National School Breakfast Program and donated commodities received for the Food Distribution Program.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Summer Feeding Program – funds received from the Department of Human Services that are awarded for meals provided to the community based on the average number of daily participants.

Career and Technical Basis Grant – funds provided for purposes of vocational-technical education.

Title II Part A Teacher and Principal Training and Recruiting – financial assistance to 1) increase student academic achievement through improving teacher and principal quality and increasing the number of highly qualified teachers in classrooms; 2) hold local education agencies and schools accountable for improving student academic achievement.

Title III Part A English Language Acquisition – funds granted on a project basis to improve the education of limited English proficient children, by assisting the children to learn English and meet challenging academic achievement standards.

Title VI Part B Rural and Low Income – funds granted on a project basis to increase student academic achievement and decrease student dropout rates of students from families with income levels below the poverty line.

Medicaid Administrative Claiming – federal grants to states for a proportion of expenditures for medical assistance under an approved Medicaid state plan.

Title IV Part A, Subpart 1 Student Support and Academic Enrichment – funding to improve students' academic achievement by increasing the capacity of local educational agencies to provide all students with access to a well-rounded education, improve school conditions for student learning, and improve the use of technology to improve the academic achievement and digital literacy of all students.

21<sup>st</sup> Century Community Learning Centers – funding to create community learning centers that provide academic enrichment opportunities during non-school hours for children, particularly students who attend high-poverty and low-performing schools.

Visually Impaired SSVI – funding to support students with visual impairments so that they may receive an educational experience equal to their sighted peers, in order to gain academic excellence.

Advanced Placement Incentives – funds designated to assist districts and schools with enhancing their programs for advanced level students.

Instructional Materials Allotment – funds awarded to schools under the textbook allotment.

Pre K Grant – funding to implement high-quality prekindergarten programs.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Achievement Academy – funds appropriated by the State to pay stipends to teachers at the kindergarten through third grade level, who successfully complete mathematics and literacy achievement academies.

Campus Activity Funds – funds raised from fundraising and used for transactions related to a principal's activity fund.

Capital Projects Funds - non-major, unbudgeted funds that account for proceeds from long-term debt financing and revenues and expenditures related to authorized construction and other capital asset acquisition. The district is currently accounting for the construction of a transportation facility that is being financed from the general fund balance through transfers to the capital projects funds.

Private-Purpose Trust Funds: These funds are used to report trust arrangements under which principal and income benefit individuals, private organizations, or other governments not reported in other fiduciary fund types.

Agency Funds: These funds are used to report student activity funds and other resources held in a purely custodial capacity (assets equal liabilities). Agency funds typically involve only the receipt, temporary investment, and remittance of fiduciary resources to individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Fiduciary funds are reported in the fiduciary fund financial statements. However, because their assets are held in a trustee or agent capacity and are therefore not available to support District programs, these funds are not included in the government-wide statements.

**b. Measurement Focus, Basis of Accounting**

Government-wide and Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements: These financial statements are reported using the economic resources measurement focus. They are reported using the accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded at the time liabilities are incurred, regardless of when the related cash flows take place. Nonexchange transactions, in which the District gives (or receives) value without directly receiving (or giving) equal value in exchange, include property taxes, grants, entitlements, and donations. On an accrual basis, revenue from property taxes is recognized in the fiscal year for which the taxes are levied. Revenue from grants, entitlements, and donations is recognized in the fiscal year in which all eligibility requirements have been satisfied.

Governmental Fund Financial Statements: Governmental funds are reported using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Under this method, revenues are recognized when measurable and available. The District considers all revenues reported in the governmental funds

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

to be available if the revenues are collected within sixty days after year-end. Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the susceptible-to-accrual concept. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available. Expenditures are recorded when the related fund liability is incurred, except for principal and interest on general long-term debt, claims and judgments, and compensated absences, which are recognized as expenditures to the extent they have matured. General capital asset acquisitions are reported as expenditures in governmental funds. Proceeds of general long-term debt and acquisitions under capital leases are reported as other financing sources.

When the District incurs an expenditure or expense for which both restricted and unrestricted resources may be used, it is the District's policy to use restricted resources first, then unrestricted resources.

**3. Financial Statement Amounts**

**a. Property Taxes**

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed. Property tax revenues are considered available when they become due or past due and receivable within the current period.

Allowances for uncollectible tax receivables within the General and Debt Service Funds are based upon historical experience in collecting property taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature.

**b. Inventories and Prepaid Items**

Inventories of supplies and plant maintenance on the balance sheet are valued at cost determined on a weighted average method, and offset with a corresponding fund equity reserve. These inventory items are accounted for on the consumption method whereby expenditures are recorded when they are consumed. Food commodities, on the other hand, are recorded at market values supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services. Supplies are used for almost all functions of activity, while food commodities are used only in the food service program. Although commodities are received at no cost, their fair market value is supplied by

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

the Texas Department of Human Services and recorded as inventory and deferred revenue when received. When requisitioned, inventory and deferred revenue are relieved, expenditures are charged, and revenue is recognized for an equal amount.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items. The cost of prepaid items is recorded as expenditures when consumed rather than purchased.

c. **Cash and Cash Equivalents**

Cash equivalents include demand deposits as well as short-term, highly liquid investments readily convertible to cash. Cash equivalents are reported as cash and temporary investments.

d. **Investments**

Investments are recorded at fair value.

e. **Capital Assets**

Capital assets, land, buildings, construction in progress and furniture and equipment, are reported in the governmental activities column in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets are reported at cost or estimated historical cost. Capital assets have an individual cost of \$5,000 or more. Donated capital assets are recorded at their estimated fair market value at the date of the donation. The cost of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets' lives are not capitalized.

Capital assets are being depreciated using the straight-line method over the following estimated useful lives:

|                       | Estimated           |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <u>Asset Class</u>    | <u>Useful Lives</u> |
| Infrastructure        | 30                  |
| Buildings             | 50                  |
| Building Improvements | 20                  |
| Vehicles              | 2-15                |
| Office Equipment      | 3-15                |
| Computer Equipment    | 3-15                |

f. **Deferred Outflows and Inflows of Resources**

In addition to assets, the statements of financial position (the government-wide Statement of Net Position and governmental funds balance sheet) will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

statement element, deferred outflows of resources, represents a consumption of net position and/or fund balance that applies to one or more future periods and so will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditure) until then.

In addition to liabilities, the statements of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, deferred inflows of resources, represents an acquisition of net position that applies to one or more future periods and so will not be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time.

g. Bonds Payable

In the government-wide financial statements, long-term debt obligations are reported as liabilities in the governmental activities statement of net position. Bond premiums and discounts are deferred and amortized over the term of the bonds using the effective interest method.

The fund financial statements recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums are reported as other financing sources. Discounts are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

h. Inter-fund Receivables and Payables

Inter-fund activity results from loans, services provided, reimbursements or transfers between funds. Loans are reported as inter-fund receivables and payables as appropriate and are subject to elimination upon consolidation. Reimbursements occur when one fund incurs a cost, charges the appropriate benefiting fund and reduces its related cost as a reimbursement.

i. Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires the use of management's estimates.

j. Data Control Codes

Data Control Codes appear in the rows and above the columns of certain financial statements. These codes refer to the account code structure prescribed by the Texas Education Agency in the *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. The TEA requires the display of these codes in the financial statements filed with TEA in order to ensure accuracy in building a statewide database for policy development and funding plans.

k. Fund Balances - Governmental Funds

Fund balances of the governmental funds are classified as follows:

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Nonspendable Fund Balance - represents amounts that cannot be spent because they are either not in spendable form (such as inventory or prepaid insurance) or legally required to remain intact (such as notes receivable or principal of a permanent fund).

Restricted Fund Balance - represents amounts that are constrained by external parties, constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

Committed Fund Balance - represents amounts that can only be used for a specific purpose because of a formal action by the District's Board of Trustees. Committed amounts cannot be used for any other purpose unless the Board of Trustees removes those constraints by taking the same type of formal action. Committed fund balance amounts may be used for other purposes with appropriate due process by the Board of Trustees. Commitments are typically done through adoption and amendment of the budget. Committed fund balance amounts differ from restricted balances in that the constraints on their use do not come from outside parties, constitutional provisions, or enabling legislation.

Assigned Fund Balance - represents amounts which the District intends to use for a specific purpose, but that do not meet the criteria to be classified as restricted or committed. Intent may be stipulated by the Board of Trustees or by an official or body to which the Board of Trustees delegates the authority. Specific amounts that are not restricted or committed in a special revenue, capital projects, debt service or permanent fund are assigned for purposes in accordance with the nature of their fund type or the fund's primary purpose. Assignments within the general fund convey that the intended use of those amounts is for a specific purpose that is narrower than the general purposes of the District itself.

Unassigned Fund Balance - represents amounts which are unconstrained in that they may be spent for any purpose. Only the general fund reports a positive unassigned fund balance. Other governmental funds might report a negative balance in this classification because of overspending for specific purposes for which amounts had been restricted, committed or assigned.

**l. Net Position Flow Assumption**

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted (e.g., restricted bond or grant proceeds) and unrestricted resources. In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted net position and unrestricted net position in the government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted net position to have been depleted before unrestricted net position is applied.

**m. Fund Balance Flow Assumptions**



**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted and unrestricted resources (the total of committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance). In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted, committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance in the governmental fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted fund balance to have been depleted before using any of the components of unrestricted fund balance. Further, when the components of unrestricted fund balance can be used for the same purpose, committed fund balance is depleted first, followed by assigned fund balance. Unassigned fund balance is applied last.

4. Pensions

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS' fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

5. Other Post-Employment Benefits

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) TRS Care Plan has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net OPEB liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits, OPEB expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS Care's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. There are no investments as this is a pay-as you-go plan and all cash is held in a cash account.

B. Compliance and Accountability

1. Finance-Related Legal and Contractual Provisions

In accordance with GASB Statement No. 38, "Certain Financial Statement Note Disclosures," violations of finance related legal and contractual provisions, The District did not incur any such violations in the current year.

2. Deficit Fund Balance or Fund Net Position of Individual Funds

The District's fund balances did not experience deficit fund balances in the current year.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**C. Deposits and Investments**

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract. The depository bank deposits for safekeeping and trust with the District's agent bank approved pledged securities in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insurance.

**1. Cash Deposits:**

At June 30, 2018, the carrying amount of the District's deposits (cash, certificates of deposit, and interest-bearing savings accounts included in temporary investments) was \$2,029,049 and the bank balance was \$2,588,210. The District's cash deposits at June 30, 2018 and during the year ended June 30, 2018, were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by pledged collateral held by the District's agent bank in the District's name.

**2. Investments:**

The District is required by Government Code Chapter 2256, The Public Funds Investment Act, to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, and (9) bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit.

The Public Funds Investment Act ("Act") requires an annual audit of investment practices. Audit procedures in this area conducted as a part of the audit of the basic financial statements disclosed that in the areas of investment practices, management reports and establishment of appropriate policies, the District adhered to the requirements of the Act. Additionally, investment practices of the District were in accordance with local policies.

The Act determines the types of investments which are allowable for the District. These include, with certain restrictions, 1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas, 2) certificates of deposit, 3) certain municipal securities, 4) securities lending program, 5) repurchase agreements, 6) bankers acceptances, 7) mutual funds, 8) investment pools, 9) guaranteed investment contracts, and 10) commercial paper.

The District's investment at June 30, 2018 is shown below.

| <u>Investment of Investment Type</u> | <u>Rating</u> | <u>Maturity</u> | <u>Fair Value</u>    |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| Lone Star Investment Pool            | AAA           | 50 days         | \$ 24,975,323        |
| Total Investments                    |               |                 | <u>\$ 24,975,323</u> |

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

3. Analysis of Specific Deposit and Investment Risks

GASB Statement No. 40 requires a determination as to whether the District was exposed to the following specific investment risks at year end and if so, the reporting of certain related disclosures:

a. Credit Risk

Credit risk is the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations. The ratings of securities by nationally recognized rating agencies are designed to give an indication of credit risk. At year end, the District was not significantly exposed to credit risk.

At June 30, 2018, the District's investments, other than those which are obligations of or guaranteed by the U. S. Government, are rated as to credit quality as follows:

b. Custodial Credit Risk

Deposits are exposed to custodial credit risk if they are not covered by depository insurance and the deposits are uncollateralized, collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution, or collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution's trust department or agent but not in the District's name.

Investment securities are exposed to custodial credit risk if the securities are uninsured, are not registered in the name of the government, and are held by either the counterparty or the counterparty's trust department or agent but not in the District's name.

At year end, the District was not exposed to custodial credit risk.

c. Concentration of Credit Risk

This risk is the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of a government's investment in a single issuer. At year end, the District was not exposed to concentration of credit risk.

d. Interest Rate Risk

This is the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to interest rate risk.

e. Foreign Currency Risk

This is the risk that exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Investment Accounting Policy

The District's general policy is to report money market investments and short-term participating interest-earning investment contracts at amortized cost and to report nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts using a cost-based measure. However, if the fair value of an investment is significantly affected by the impairment of the credit standing of the issuer or by other factors, it is reported at fair value. All other investments are reported at fair value unless a legal contract exists which guarantees a higher value. The term "short-term" refers to investments which have a remaining term of one year or less at time of purchase. The term "nonparticipating" means that the investment's value does not vary with market interest rate changes. Nonnegotiable certificates of deposit are examples of nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts.

Public Funds Investment Pools

Public funds investment pools in Texas ("Pools") are established under the authority of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 79 of the Texas Government Code, and are subject to the provisions of the Public Funds Investment Act (the "Act"), Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code. In addition to other provisions of the Act designed to promote liquidity and safety of principal, the Act requires Pools to: 1) have an advisory board composed of participants in the pool and other persons who do not have a business relationship with the pool and are qualified to advise the pool; 2) maintain a continuous rating of no lower than AAA or AAA-m or an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and 3) maintain the market value of its underlying investment portfolio within one half of one percent of the value of its shares.

The District's investments in Pools are reported at an amount determined by the fair value per share of the pool's underlying portfolio, unless the pool is 2a7-like, in which case they are reported at share value. A 2a7-like pool is one which is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") as an investment company, but nevertheless has a policy that it will, and does, operate in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

Lone Star

The Lone Star Investment Pool (Lone Star) is a public funds investment pool created pursuant to the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 791, and the Public Funds Investment Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 2256. Lone Star is administered by First Public, a subsidiary of the Texas Association of School Boards (TASB), with Standish and American Beacon Advisors managing the investment and reinvestment of Lone Star's assets. State Street Bank provides custody and valuation services to Lone Star. All of the board of trustees' eleven members are Lone Star participants by either being employees or elected officials of a participant. Lone Star has established an advisory board composed of both pool members and non-members. Lone Star is rated AAA by Standard and Poor's and operated in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940. The District is invested in the Corporate Overnight Plus Fund of Lone Star which seeks to maintain a net asset value of one dollar. Lone Star has 3 different funds: Government Overnight, Corporate Overnight and Corporate Overnight Plus. All three funds maintain a net asset value of one dollar.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**D. Capital Assets**

Capital asset activity for the year ended June 30, 2018, was as follows:

|   | Beginning<br>Balance | Additions      | Deletions/<br>Reclassifications | Ending<br>Balance |
|---|----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| Governmental Activities                     |                      |                |                                 |                   |
| Capital Assets Not Being Depreciated:       |                      |                |                                 |                   |
| Land and Improvements                       | \$ 3,838,185         | \$ 293,500     | \$ -                            | \$ 4,131,685      |
| Construction in Progress                    | 52,450               | 1,018,852      | -                               | 1,071,302         |
| Total Capital Assets Not Being Depreciated  | 3,890,635            | 1,312,352      | -                               | 5,202,987         |
| Capital Assets Being Depreciated:           |                      |                |                                 |                   |
| Buildings and Improvements                  | 119,996,747          | 33,400         | -                               | 120,030,147       |
| Equipment                                   | 9,789,143            | 771,746        | (130,484)                       | 10,430,405        |
| Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated      | 129,785,890          | 805,146        | (130,484)                       | 130,460,552       |
| Less Accumulated Depreciation For:          |                      |                |                                 |                   |
| Buildings and Improvements                  | (38,039,776)         | (2,953,162)    | 1,998                           | (40,990,940)      |
| Equipment                                   | (6,428,902)          | (794,237)      | 130,484                         | (7,092,655)       |
| Total Accumulated Depreciation              | (44,468,678)         | (3,747,399)    | 132,482                         | (48,083,595)      |
| Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated, Net | 85,317,212           | (2,942,253)    | 1,998                           | 82,376,957        |
| Governmental Activities Capital Assets, Net | \$ 89,207,847        | \$ (1,629,901) | \$ 1,998                        | \$ 87,579,944     |

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| Instruction                                  | \$ 2,093,181        |
| Instructional Resources and Media Services   | 43,212              |
| Curriculum & Staff Development               | 13,972              |
| Instructional Leadership                     | 68,595              |
| School Leadership                            | 184,438             |
| Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services | 124,912             |
| Health Services                              | 38,845              |
| Student Transportation                       | 313,746             |
| Food Services                                | 196,581             |
| Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities      | 103,184             |
| General Administration                       | 146,122             |
| Plant Maintenance and Operations             | 337,029             |
| Security and Monitoring Services             | 1,672               |
| Data Processing Services                     | 52,156              |
| Community Services                           | 29,754              |
|  | <u>\$ 3,747,399</u> |

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**E. Interfund Balances and Activities**

**1. Due To and From Other Funds**

Balances due to and due from other funds at June 30, 2018, consisted of the following:

| <u>Due to Fund</u>       | <u>Due From Fund</u>     | <u>Amount</u>     | <u>Purpose</u>     |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| General Fund             | Other Governmental Funds | \$ 462,899        | Temporary advances |
| Other Governmental Funds | General Fund             | 17,725            | Temporary advances |
| Other Governmental Funds | Other Governmental Funds | <u>36,913</u>     | Temporary advances |
| Total                    |                          | <u>\$ 517,537</u> |                    |

All amounts due are scheduled to be repaid within one year.

**2. Transfers To and From Other Funds**

Transfers to and from other funds at June 30, 2018, consisted of the following:

| <u>Transfer To Fund</u>  | <u>Transfer From Fund</u> | <u>Amount</u>       | <u>Purpose</u> |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Other Governmental Funds | General Fund              | \$ 824,141          | Construction   |
| Other Governmental Funds | Other Governmental Funds  | <u>204,840</u>      | Construction   |
| Total                    |                           | <u>\$ 1,028,981</u> |                |

**F. Disaggregation of Receivables and Payables**

Receivables at June 30, 2018 were as follows:

|                               | <u>Property<br/>Taxes (Net<br/>of Allowance)</u> | <u>Other<br/>Governments</u> | <u>Other<br/>Receivables</u> | <u>Total<br/>Receivables</u> |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Governmental Activities:      |  |                              |                              |                              |
| General Fund                  | \$ 1,584,600                                     | \$ 772,793                   | \$ 500                       | \$ 2,357,893                 |
| Debt Service Fund             | 347,977  | 56,262                       | -                            | 404,239                      |
| Nonmajor Governmental Funds   | <u>-</u>   | <u>749,129</u>               | <u>-</u>                     | <u>749,129</u>               |
| Total-Governmental Activities | <u>\$ 1,932,577</u>                              | <u>\$ 1,578,184</u>          | <u>\$ 500</u>                | <u>\$ 3,511,261</u>          |

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Payables at June 30, 2018 were as follows:

|                               | Accounts<br>Payable | Salaries<br>and<br>Benefits | Due to<br>Other<br>Governments | Total<br>Payables   |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| Governmental Activities:      |                     |                             |                                |                     |
| General Fund                  | \$ 257,844          | \$ 3,147,996                | \$ 1,493,348                   | \$ 4,899,188        |
| Nonmajor Governmental Funds   | 303,137             | 240,474                     | 746                            | 544,357             |
| Total-Governmental Activities | <u>\$ 560,981</u>   | <u>\$ 3,388,470</u>         | <u>\$ 1,494,094</u>            | <u>\$ 5,443,545</u> |

G. Capital Leases

The District accounts for short-term debts through the appropriate funds. Short-term debts include leases made in accordance with the provisions of the Texas Education Code.

In September 2017, the District entered into a capital lease agreement for eight hundred combination of Chromebooks and Dell Latitudes for 3 years with the option to purchase.

In December 2017, the District entered into a capital lease agreement for four hundred iPad and Otter Box cases for 3 years with the option to purchase.

The interest rate and payments are outlined below:

| Date of Issue<br>and Purpose | Interest<br>Rate | Maturity<br>Date | Amounts<br>Outstanding<br>7/1/2017 | Issued<br>Current<br>Year | (Retired)<br>Current<br>Year | Amounts<br>Outstanding<br>6/30/2018 | Interest<br>Current<br>Year |
|------------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 9/1/2017                     |                  |                  |                                    |                           |                              |                                     |                             |
| Dell Chromebooks             | 1.85%            | 2020             | \$ -                               | \$ 400,901                | \$ (139,720)                 | \$ 261,181                          | \$ -                        |
| 12/8/2017                    |                  |                  |                                    |                           |                              |                                     |                             |
| Apple Ipad & Otter Box Cases | 1.90%            | 2020             | -                                  | 130,480                   | (44,314)                     | 86,166                              | -                           |
|                              |                  |                  | <u>\$ -</u>                        | <u>\$ 531,381</u>         | <u>\$ (184,034)</u>          | <u>\$ 347,347</u>                   | <u>\$ -</u>                 |

The future minimum lease payments for the years ending June 30 are as follows:

| Year<br>Ending<br>June 30 | Principal         | Interest         | Total<br>Requirements |
|---------------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 2019                      | \$ 170,315        | \$ 13,719        | \$ 184,034            |
| 2020                      | 177,032           | 7,002            | 184,034               |
| Total                     | <u>\$ 347,347</u> | <u>\$ 20,721</u> | <u>\$ 368,068</u>     |

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

H. Long-Term Obligations

1. Long-Term Obligation Activity

Long-term obligations include debt and other long-term liabilities. Changes in long-term obligations for the year ended June 30, 2018, are as follows:

|  | Beginning<br>Balance  | Increases           | Decreases            | Ending<br>Balance         | Amounts<br>Due Within<br>One Year |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Governmental Activities:                               |                       |                     |                      |                           |                                   |
| General Obligation Bonds                               | \$ 63,339,544         |                     | \$ 3,169,544         | \$ 60,170,000             | \$ 5,105,000                      |
| Premium on Bonds                                       | 7,766,953             | -                   | 447,795              | 7,319,158                 | -                                 |
| Accumulated Accretion on CAB's                         | 6,218,787             | 39,043              | 1,327,274            | 4,930,556                 | -                                 |
| Loss on Refunding                                      | (7,408,502)           | -                   | (446,160)            | (6,962,342)               | -                                 |
| Total Bonds Payable                                    | 69,916,782            | 39,043              | 4,498,453            | 65,457,372                | 5,105,000                         |
| Other Liabilities:                                     |                       |                     |                      |                           |                                   |
| Capital Leases   | -                     | 531,381             | 184,034              | 347,347                   | 170,315                           |
| Net OPEB Liability                                     | 27,488,552            | 2,635               | 11,920,902           | 15,570,285                | -                                 |
| Net Pension Liability                                  | 9,252,132             | 1,174,305           | 2,679,066            | 7,747,371                 | -                                 |
| Total Other Liabilities                                | 36,740,684            | 1,708,321           | 14,784,002           | 23,665,003                | 170,315                           |
| Total Governmental Activities<br>Long-Term Liabilities | <u>\$ 106,657,466</u> | <u>\$ 1,747,364</u> | <u>\$ 19,282,455</u> | <u>\$ 89,122,375</u>      | <u>\$ 5,275,315</u>               |
|  |                       |                     |                      | Due Within One Year       | \$ 5,275,315                      |
|  |                       |                     |                      | Due in More Than One Year | 60,529,404                        |
|  |                       |                     |                      |                           | <u>\$ 65,804,719</u>              |

The following table displays total principal debt outstanding by issuance at year end.

| Date of<br>Issue | Description  | Interest<br>Rates | Original<br>Issue | Final<br>Maturity<br>Date | Debt<br>Principal    | CAB<br>Accretion    |
|------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 7/1/2009         | Series 2009A | 5.00              | 9,341,617         | 8/15/2018                 | \$ 225,000           | \$ -                |
| 7/15/2014        | Series 2014  | 2.00 to 4.00      | 9,290,000         | 8/15/2034                 | 8,630,000            | 201,120             |
| 2/15/2015        | Series 2015  | 3.00 to 4.50      | 8,685,000         | 8/15/2037                 | 8,320,000            | -                   |
| 4/15/2016        | Series 2016A | 2.00 to 3.00      | 9,025,000         | 8/15/2037                 | 8,530,000            | -                   |
| 5/1/2016         | Series 2016B | 4.00              | 4,945,000         | 8/15/2022                 | 4,480,000            | 4,729,436           |
| 1/15/2017        | Series 2017  | 4.00 to 5.00      | 30,090,000        | 8/15/2037                 | 29,985,000           | -                   |
|                  |              |                   |                   |                           | <u>\$ 60,170,000</u> | <u>\$ 4,930,556</u> |

2. Debt Service Requirements

Debt service requirements on long-term debt at June 30, 2018, are as follows:



**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

| Year<br>Ending<br>June 30 | Governmental Activities |                      |                       |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
|                           | Principal               | Interest             | Total<br>Requirements |
| 2019                      | \$ 5,105,000            | \$ 1,968,300         | \$ 7,073,300          |
| 2020                      | 5,280,000               | 1,787,300            | 7,067,300             |
| 2021                      | 2,050,000               | 3,297,450            | 5,347,450             |
| 2022                      | 2,120,000               | 3,224,175            | 5,344,175             |
| 2023                      | 2,205,000               | 3,135,875            | 5,340,875             |
| 2024-2028                 | 15,080,000              | 5,577,762            | 20,657,762            |
| 2029-2033                 | 12,890,000              | 3,812,894            | 16,702,894            |
| 2034-2038                 | 15,440,000              | 1,224,700            | 16,664,700            |
| Total                     | <u>\$ 60,170,000</u>    | <u>\$ 24,028,456</u> | <u>\$ 84,198,456</u>  |

On July 15, 2014, the District issued \$6,550,000 in Unlimited Tax Building Bonds with an interest rate between 2% to 4%. In addition, \$2,740,000 in Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds were issued, along with additional funds of the district to refund \$3,000,000 of the District's 2007A Series, Unlimited Tax Building Bonds. The net proceeds of \$3,272,859 were used to purchase U.S. government securities. Those securities were deposited in an irrevocable trust with an escrow agent to provide for all future debt service payments on the refunded 2007A Series bonds. As a result, this portion of the 2007A Series bonds are considered under Texas State law, to be defeased in-substance and the liability for those bonds has been removed from the Statement of Net Position.

The difference between the principal amount of \$9,290,000 and the sales price of \$9,994,189 represents the unamortized premium. The premium is being amortized over the life of the bonds using the interest method and is presented as an addition to the face value of the bonds. The amortization for the year ended June 30, 2018 was \$35,209.

The advanced refunding of the 2007A Series bonds resulted in a \$552,037 difference between the reacquisition price and the net carrying amount of the old debt. This difference, reported in the financial statements as a deferred outflow of resources, is being amortized over the life of the Series 2007A debt in accordance with GASB 7 entitled Advanced Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt. This transaction resulted in future cash flow savings of \$376,267 through 2039 and an economic gain (difference between the present value of the old and new debt service payments) of \$297,302.

On February 18, 2015, the District issued \$8,685,000 in Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds with an interest rate between 3.0% to 4.5%, along with additional funds of the district, to refund \$9,065,000 of the 2007A Unlimited Tax Building Bonds. The net proceeds were used to purchase U.S. government securities. Those securities were deposited in an irrevocable trust with an escrow agent to provide for all future debt service payments on the refunded 2007A Series bonds. As a result, this portion of the 2007A Series bonds are considered under Texas State law, to be defeased in-substance and the liability for those bonds has been removed from the Statement of Net Position.

The difference between the principal amount of \$8,685,000 and the sales price of \$9,750,963 represents the unamortized premium. The premium is being amortized over the life of the

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

bonds using the interest method and is presented as an addition to the face value of the bonds. The amortization for the year ended June 30, 2018 was \$45,147.

The advanced refunding of the 2007A Series bonds resulted in a \$528,035 difference between the reacquisition price and the net carrying amount of the old debt. This difference, reported in the financial statements as a deferred outflow of resources, is being amortized over the life of the Series 2007A debt in accordance with GASB 7 entitled Advanced Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt. This transaction resulted in future cash flow savings of \$1,808,334 through 2039 and an economic gain (difference between the present value of the old and new debt service payments) of \$1,381,298.

On April 15, 2016, the District issued \$9,025,000 in Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2016A with an interest rate between 2.0% and 3%, to refund \$9,085,000 of the 2007A Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds. The net proceeds were used to purchase U.S. government securities. Those securities were deposited in an irrevocable trust with an escrow agent to provide for all future debt service payments on the refunded 2007A Series bonds. As a result, this portion of the 2007A Series bonds are considered under Texas State law, to be defeased in-substance and the liability for those bonds has been removed from the Statement of Net Position.

The difference between the principal amount of \$9,025,000 and the sales price of \$9,468,830 represents the unamortized premium. The premium is being amortized over the life of the bonds using the interest method and is presented as an addition to the face value of the bonds. The amortization for the year ended June 30, 2018 was \$24,352.

The advanced refunding of the 2007A Series bonds resulted in a \$200,634 difference between the reacquisition price and the net carrying amount of the old debt. This difference, reported in the financial statements as a deferred outflow of resources, is being amortized over the life of the Series 2006 debt in accordance with GASB 7 entitled Advanced Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt. This transaction resulted in future cash flow savings of \$2,629,695 through 2037 and an economic gain (difference between the present value of the old and new debt service payments) of \$2,147,739.

On May 1, 2016, the District issued \$4,945,000 in Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2016B with an interest rate of 4.0%, along with additional funds of the district, to refund \$4,946,809 of the 2006 Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds. The net proceeds were used to purchase U.S. government securities. Those securities were deposited in an irrevocable trust with an escrow agent to provide for all future debt service payments on the refunded 2006 Series bonds. As a result, this portion of the 2006 Series bonds are considered under Texas State law, to be defeased in-substance and the liability for those bonds has been removed from the Statement of Net Position.

The difference between the principal amount of \$4,945,000 and the sales price of \$9,955,501 represents the unamortized premium. The premium is being amortized over the life of the bonds using the interest method and is presented as an addition to the face value of the bonds. The amortization for the year ended June 30, 2018 was \$247,827.

The advanced refunding of the 2006 Series bonds resulted in a \$6,366,483 difference between the reacquisition price and the net carrying amount of the old debt. This difference, reported in the financial statements as a deferred outflow of resources, is being amortized over the life of

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

the Series 2006 debt in accordance with GASB 7 entitled Advanced Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt. This transaction resulted in future cash flow savings of \$2,972,404 through 2022 and an economic gain (difference between the present value of the old and new debt service payments) of \$2,811,152.

On January 15, 2017, the District issued \$30,090,000 in Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2017 with an interest rate between 3% and 5%, along with additional funds of the district, to refund \$23,210,000 of the 2008 Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds and \$7,985,000 of the 2009A Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds. The net proceeds were used to purchase U.S. government securities. Those securities were deposited in an irrevocable trust with an escrow agent to provide for all future debt service payments on the refunded 2008 and 2009A Series bonds. As a result, this portion of the 2008 and 2009A Series bonds are considered under Texas State law, to be defeased in-substance and the liability for those bonds has been removed from the Statement of Net Position.

The difference between the principal amount of \$30,090,000 and the sales price of \$31,590,120 represents the unamortized premium. The premium is being amortized over the life of the bonds using the interest method and is presented as an addition to the face value of the bonds. The amortization for the year ended June 30, 2018 was \$56,013.

The advanced refunding of the 2008 and 2009A Series bonds resulted in a \$903,360 difference between the reacquisition price and the net carrying amount of the old debt. This difference, reported in the financial statements as a deferred outflow of resources, is being amortized over the life of the Series 2006 debt in accordance with GASB 7 entitled Advanced Refunding. Resulting in Defeasance of Debt. This transaction resulted in future cash flow savings of \$9,490,094 through 2039 and an economic gain (difference between the present value of the old and new debt service payments) of \$6,182,273.

There are a number of limitations and restrictions contained in the general obligation bond indentures. Management has indicated that the District is in compliance with all significant limitations and restrictions at June 30, 2018.

In prior years the District defeased certain bonds by placing the proceeds of new bonds in an irrevocable trust to provide for all future debt service payments on the old bonds. Accordingly, the trust account assets and liabilities for the defeased bonds are not included in the Statement of Net Position.

The defeased bonds outstanding at June 30, 2018 are as follows:

| Bond Issue   | Amount               |
|--------------|----------------------|
| Series 2006  | \$ 4,551,733         |
| Series 2007A | 20,500,000           |
| Series 2008  | 23,210,000           |
| Series 2009A | 7,985,000            |
| Total        | <u>\$ 56,246,733</u> |

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**I. Risk Management**

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts, theft, damage or destruction of assets, errors and omissions, injuries to employees, and natural disasters. During fiscal year 2018, the District purchased commercial insurance to cover general liabilities. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year and there were no settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three fiscal years.

**J. Pension Plan**

**1. Plan Description**

The District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67, and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

**2. Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position**

Detail information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at [https://www.trs.texas.gov/TRSDocuments/cafr\\_2017.pdf](https://www.trs.texas.gov/TRSDocuments/cafr_2017.pdf); by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

**3. Benefits Provided**

TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs, can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description in (1.) above.

**4. Contributions**

Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83rd Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 through 2017. The 84rd Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

| <b><u>Contribution Rates</u></b>              |              |             |
|---|--------------|-------------|
|   | <u>2017</u>  | <u>2018</u> |
| Member  | 7.70%        | 7.70%       |
| Non-employer Contributing Entity (NECE-State) | 6.80%        | 6.80%       |
| Employers                                     | 6.80%        | 6.80%       |
|   |              |             |
| District's 2017 Employer contributions        | \$ 855,252   |             |
| District's 2017 Member Contributions          | \$ 2,226,561 |             |
| NECE 2017 On-Behalf Contributions to District | \$ 1,444,542 |             |

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State is the employer for senior colleges, medical schools and state agencies including TRS. In each respective role, the State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education and junior colleges, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers (public school, junior college, other entities or the State of Texas as the employer for senior universities and medical schools) are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding sources, a privately sponsored source, from non-educational and general, or local funds.
- When the employing district is a public junior college or junior college district, the employer shall contribute to the retirement system an amount equal to 50% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to:

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district or charter school does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

**5. Actuarial Assumptions**

The total pension liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial evaluation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Valuation Date                               | August 31, 2017             |
| Actuarial Cost Method                        | Individual Entry Age Normal |
| Asset Valuation Method                       | Market Value                |
| Single Discount Rate                         | 8%                          |
| Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return | 8%                          |
| Municipal Bond Rate                          | N/A                         |
| Last year ending August 31 in 2017 to 2116   |                             |
| Projection period (100 years)                | 2116                        |
| Inflation                                    | 2.5%                        |

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| Salary Increases including inflation   | 3.5% to 9.5% |
| Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes | None         |

The actuarial methods and assumptions are based primarily on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

**6. Discount Rate**

The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability.

The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2017 are summarized below:

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**Teacher Retirement System of Texas**  
**Asset Allocation and Long-Term Expected Real Rate of Return**  
**As of August 31, 2017**

| Asset Class                   | Target<br>Allocation | Long-Term<br>Expected<br>Geometric<br>Real Rate<br>of Return | Expected<br>Contribution to<br>Long-Term<br>Portfolio<br>Returns |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|--|--|
| <b>Global Equity</b>          |                      |  |  |
| U.S.                          | 18%                  | 4.6%   | 1.0%   |
| Non-U.S. Developed            | 13%                  | 5.1%   | 0.8%   |
| Emerging Markets              | 9%                   | 5.9%   | 0.7%   |
| Directional Hedge Funds       | 4%                   | 3.2%   | 0.1%   |
| Private Equity                | 13%                  | 7.0%   | 1.1%   |
| <b>Stable Value</b>           |                      |  |  |
| U.S. Treasuries               | 11%                  | 0.7%   | 0.1%   |
| Absolute Return               | 0%                   | 1.8%   | 0.0%   |
| Stable Value Hedge Funds      | 4%                   | 3.0%   | 0.1%   |
| Cash                          | 1%                   | -0.2%  | 0.0%   |
| <b>Real Return</b>            |                      |  |  |
| Global Inflation Linked Bonds | 3%                   | 0.9%   | 0.0%   |
| Real Assets                   | 16%                  | 5.1%   | 1.1%   |
| Energy and Natural Resources  | 3%                   | 6.6%   | 0.2%   |
| Commodities                   | 0%                   | 1.2%   | 0.0%   |
| <b>Risk Parity</b>            |                      |  |  |
| Risk Parity                   | 5%                   | 6.7%   | 0.3%   |
| Inflation Expectation         |                      |  | 2.2%   |
| Alpha                         |                      |  | 1.0%   |
| <b>Total</b>                  | <b>100%</b>          |  | <b>8.7%</b>  |

7. Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following schedule shows the impact of the net pension liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the Net Pension Liability.



**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

|  | 1%<br>Decrease in<br>Discount Rate<br>7% | Discount<br>Rate<br>8% | 1%<br>Increase in<br>Discount Rate<br>9% |
|--|--|------------------------|--|
| District's proportionate<br>share of the net pension liability | \$ 13,060,536                            | \$7,747,371            | \$ 3,323,298                             |

8. Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

At June 30, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$7,747,371 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| District's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability | \$ 7,747,371        |
| State's proportionate share that is associated with District           | <u>14,122,645</u>   |
| Total  | <u>\$21,870,016</u> |

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the District's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 through August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability was 0.024230% which was an increase (decrease) of -0.000254% from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation - There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions of other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period:

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized pension expense of \$1,077,219 and revenue of \$1,077,219 for support provided by the State.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

At June 30, 2018, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS' deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

|  | Deferred<br>Outflows of<br>Resources | Deferred<br>Inflows of<br>Resources |
|--|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Differences between expected and actual economic experience  | \$ 113,348                           | \$ 417,806                          |
| Changes in actuarial assumptions   | 352,905                              | 202,030                             |
| Difference between projected and actual investment earnings  | -                                    | 564,611                             |
| Changes in proportion and difference between the District's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions | 1,166,379                            | 79,591                              |
| Total as of August 31, 2018 measurement date   | 1,632,632                            | 1,264,038                           |
| Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date   | 724,223                              | -                                   |
| Total  | <u>\$ 2,356,855</u>                  | <u>\$ 1,264,038</u>                 |

The net amounts of the District's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

| Year Ended<br>June 30 | Pension<br>Expense<br>Amount |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 2019                  | \$ (30,310)                  |
| 2020                  | 333,376                      |
| 2021                  | 328,720                      |
| 2022                  | 268,976                      |
| 2023                  | (274,665)                    |
| Thereafter            | (257,503)                    |

**K. Defined Other Post Employment Benefit Plans**

**1. TRS-Care**

**a. Plan Description**

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care). It is a multiple-employer, cost-sharing defined Other Post Benefit (OPEB) plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Board of Trustees. It is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575.

**b. OPEB Plan Fiduciary Net Position**

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

Detail information about the TRS-Care's fiduciary net position is available in the separately-issued TRS Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

c. **Benefits Provided**

TRS-Care provides a basic health insurance coverage (TRS-Care 1), at no cost to all retirees from public schools, charter schools, regional education service centers and other educational districts who are members of the TRS pension plan. Optional dependent coverage is available for an additional fee.

Eligible retirees and their dependents not enrolled in Medicare may pay premiums to participate in one of two optional insurance plans with more comprehensive benefits (TRS-Care 2 and TRS-Care 3). Eligible retirees and dependents enrolled in Medicare may elect to participate in one of the two Medicare health plans for an additional fee. To qualify for TRS-Care coverage, a retiree must have at least 10 years of service credit in the TRS pension system. The Board of Trustees is granted the authority to establish basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants as well as to amend benefit terms as needed under Chapter 1575.052. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs.

The premium rates for the optional health insurance are based on years of service of the member. The schedule below shows the monthly rates for the average retiree with Medicare Parts A&B coverage, with 20 to 29 years of service for the basic plan and the two optional plans.

| <b>TRS-Care Plan Premium Rates</b>      |                   |                      |                      |
|---|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Effective Sept. 1, 2016 - Dec. 31, 2017 |                   |                      |                      |
|   | <b>TRS-Care 1</b> | <b>TRS-Care 2</b>    | <b>TRS-Care 3</b>    |
|   | <b>Basic Plan</b> | <b>Optional Plan</b> | <b>Optional Plan</b> |
| Retiree*                                | \$ -              | \$ 70.00             | \$ 100               |
| Retiree and Spouse                      | 20                | 175                  | 255                  |
| Retiree* and Children                   | 41                | 132                  | 182                  |
| Retiree and Family                      | 61                | 237                  | 337                  |
| Surviving Children only                 | 28                | 62                   | 82                   |

*\* or surviving spouse*

d. **Contributions**

Contribution rates for the TRS-Care plan are established in state statute by the Texas Legislature, and there is no continuing obligation to provide benefits beyond each fiscal year. The TRS-Care plan is currently funded on a pay-as-you-go basis and is subject to change based on available funding. Funding for TRS-Care is provided by retiree premium contributions and contributions from the state, active employees, and school districts based upon public school district payroll. The TRS Board of trustees does not

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

have the authority to set or amend contribution rates.

Texas Insurance Code, section 1575.202 establishes the state's contribution rate which is 1.0% of the employee's salary. Section 1575.203 establishes the active employee's rate which is .65% of pay. Section 1575.204 establishes an employer contribution rate of not less than 0.25 percent or not more than 0.75 percent of the salary of each active employee of the public. The actual employer contribution rate is prescribed by the Legislature in the General Appropriations Act. The following table shows contributions to the TRS-Care plan by type of contributor.

|   | <u>Contribution Rates</u> |       |
|---|---------------------------|-------|
|   | 2017                      | 2018  |
| Member  | 0.65%                     | 0.65% |
| Non-employer Contributing Entity (NECE-State) | 1.00%                     | 1.25% |
| Employers                                     | 0.55%                     | 0.75% |
| Federal/private Funding Remitted by Employers | 1.00%                     | 1.25% |
| District's 2017 Employer contributions        | \$ 176,943                |       |
| District's 2017 Member Contributions          | \$ 177,598                |       |
| NECE 2017 On-Behalf Contributions to District | \$ 250,153                |       |

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there is an additional surcharge all TRS employers are subject to *(regardless of whether or not they participate in the TRS Care OPEB program)*. When employers hire a TRS retiree, they are required to pay to TRS Care, a monthly surcharge of \$535 per retiree.

TRS-Care received supplemental appropriations from the State of Texas as the Non-Employer Contributing Entity in the amount of \$15.6 million in fiscal year 2017 and \$182.6 million in fiscal year 2018.

e. **Actuarial Assumptions**

The total OPEB liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions: *Actuarial Assumptions can be found in the 2017 TRS CAFR, Note 10, page 82.*

The following assumptions and other inputs used for members of TRS-Care are identical to the assumptions used in the August 31, 2017 TRS pension actuarial valuation:

|  |                   |
|--|-------------------|
| Rates of Mortality                           | General Inflation |
| Rates of Retirement                          | Wage Inflation    |
| Rates of Termination                         | Expected          |
| Payroll Growth Rates of Disability Incidence |                   |

***Additional Actuarial Methods and Assumptions: See note I. 5.***

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

**Other Information:** There was a significant plan change adopted in fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will be offered and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. Assumption changes made for the August 31, 2017 valuation include a change to the assumption regarding the phase-out of the Medicare Part D subsidies and a change to the discount rate from 2.98% as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42% as of August 31, 2017.

f. Discount Rate

A single discount rate of 3.42% was used to measure the total OPEB liability. There was a change of .44 percent in the discount rate since the previous year. *The Discount Rate can be found in the 2017 TRS CAFR on page 83.* Because the plan is essentially a “pay-as-you-go” plan, the single discount rate is equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the OPEB plan’s fiduciary net position was projected to *not be able to* make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the municipal bond rate was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total OPEB liability. *The source of the municipal bond rate was Fixed-income municipal bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federally tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index’s “20-year Municipal GO AA Index” as of August 31, 2017.* See note I. 6.

g. Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following schedule shows the impact of the Net OPEB Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (3.42%) in measuring the Net OPEB Liability.

|   | 1%<br>Decrease in<br>Discount Rate<br>2.42% | Discount<br>Rate<br>3.42% | 1%<br>Increase in<br>Discount Rate<br>4.42% |
|---|---|---------------------------|---|
| District's proportionate<br>share of the net opeb liability | \$ 18,376,802                               | \$ 15,570,285             | \$ 13,314,479                               |

h. OPEB Liabilities, OPEB Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to OPEBs

At August 31, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$15,570,285 for its proportionate share of the TRS’s Net OPEB Liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State OPEB support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net OPEB liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| District's proportionate share of the collective net opeb liability | \$ 15,570,285        |
| State's proportionate share that is associated with District        | <u>20,923,648</u>    |
| Total   | <u>\$ 36,493,933</u> |

The Net OPEB Liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the Total OPEB Liability used to calculate the Net OPEB Liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the Net OPEB Liability was based on the employer's contributions to the opeb plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 thru August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the employer's proportion of the collective Net OPEB Liability was 0.91% which was the same proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation** – The following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the Total OPEB liability since the prior measurement period: *These can be found in the TRS CAFR on page 83.*

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the Total OPEB liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized OPEB expense of (\$7,001,609) and revenue of (\$7,001,609) for support provided by the State.

At August 31, 2018, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits from the following sources:

|  | Deferred<br>Outflows of<br>Resources | Deferred<br>Inflows of<br>Resources |
|--|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Differences between expected and actual economic experience  | \$ -                                 | \$ 325,042                          |
| Changes in actuarial assumptions   | -                                    | 6,188,038                           |
| Difference between projected and actual investment earnings  | 2,365                                | -                                   |
| Changes in proportion and difference between the District's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions | <u>72</u>                            | <u>-</u>                            |
| Total as of August 31, 2018 measurement date   | 2,437                                | 6,513,080                           |
| Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date   | <u>205,263</u>                       | <u>-</u>                            |
| Total  | <u>\$ 207,700</u>                    | <u>\$ 6,513,080</u>                 |

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

The net amounts of the employer's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

| Year Ended<br>June 30 | OPEB<br>Expense<br>Amount |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 2019                  | \$ (859,086)              |
| 2020                  | (859,086)                 |
| 2021                  | (859,086)                 |
| 2022                  | (859,678)                 |
| 2023                  | (859,678)                 |
| Thereafter            | (1,354,941)               |

2. Medicare Part D Subsidies

The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, which was effective January 1, 2006, established prescription drug coverage for a Medicare beneficiaries known as Medicare Part D. One of the provisions of Medicare Part D allows for the Texas Public School Retired Employee Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care) to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. For the fiscal years ended June 30, 2018, 2017, and 2016, the subsidy payments received by TRS-Care on behalf of the District were \$109,994, \$127,728, and \$103,081, respectively.

J. Employee Health Care Coverage

During the current fiscal period, employees of the District were covered by a statewide health insurance plan, TRS Active Care. The District paid premiums of \$200 per month per employee to the Plan with the State providing an additional \$75. Employees at their option, authorize payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependent coverage. The Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) manages TRS Active Care. The Plan is administered by Aetna.

The latest financial information on the statewide plan is available from TRS (see note on pension plan).

L. Deferred Inflow of Resources

Deferred inflows of resources at year end consisted of the following:

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

|                                    | General<br>Fund | Debt<br>Service<br>Fund | Total        |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| Taxes                              | \$ 1,584,600    | \$ 347,977              | \$ 1,932,577 |
| Total Deferred Inflow of Resources | \$ 1,584,600    | \$ 347,977              | \$ 1,932,577 |

**M. Due From Other Governments**

The District participates in a variety of federal and state programs from which it receives grants to partially or fully finance certain activities. In addition, the District receives entitlements from the State through the School Foundation and Per Capita Programs. Amounts due from federal and state governments as of June 30, 2018, are summarized below. All federal grants shown below are passed through the TEA and are reported on the combined financial statements as Receivables from Other Governments.

| Fund                        | State<br>Entitlements | Federal<br>Grants | Due From<br>Other Governments | Total        |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|
| General                     | \$ 508,808            | \$ -              | \$ 263,985                    | \$ 772,793   |
| Debt Service Fund           | -                     | -                 | 56,262                        | 56,262       |
| Nonmajor Governmental Funds | 23,130                | 725,999           | -                             | 749,129      |
| Total                       | \$ 531,938            | \$ 725,999        | \$ 320,247                    | \$ 1,578,184 |

**N. Revenue From Local and Intermediate Sources**

|                                  | General<br>Fund | Debt<br>Service<br>Fund | Nonmajor<br>Governmental<br>Funds | Total         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| Property Taxes                   | \$ 37,068,938   | \$ 7,933,734            | \$ -                              | \$ 45,002,672 |
| Penalties, Interest and Other    |                 |                         |                                   |               |
| Tax-related Income               | 387,377         | 81,696                  | -                                 | 469,073       |
| Investment Income                | 271,547         | 131,738                 | 8,160                             | 411,445       |
| Food Sales                       | -               | -                       | 659,250                           | 659,250       |
| Co-Curricular Student Activities | 134,503         | -                       | -                                 | 134,503       |
| Shared Services                  | -               | -                       | 187,056                           | 187,056       |
| Foundation, Gifts and Bequests   | 189,829         | -                       | 14,177                            | 204,006       |
| Other                            | 299,851         | -                       | -                                 | 299,851       |
| Total                            | \$ 38,352,045   | \$ 8,147,168            | \$ 868,643                        | \$ 47,367,856 |

**O. Commitments and Contingencies**

**1. Contingencies**

The District participates in grant programs which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, refunds of



**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

any money received may be required and the collectability of any related receivable may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying basic financial statements for such contingencies.

2. Litigation

No reportable litigation was pending against the District at June 30, 2018.

P. Shared Services Arrangements

Shared Services Arrangement - Fiscal Agent

The District is the fiscal agent for a Shared Services Arrangement ("SSA") which provides services to the member districts listed below. All services are provided by the fiscal agent. The member districts provide the funds to the fiscal agent. According to guidance provided in TEA's Resource Guide, the District has accounted for the fiscal agent's activities of the SSA in a special revenue fund and will be accounted for using Model 3 in the SSA section of the Resource Guide. Expenditures of the SSA are summarized below:

| <u>Member Districts</u> | <u>Expenditures</u> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Burnet CISD             | \$ 672,941          |
| Total                   | <u>\$ 672,941</u>   |

Q. Prior Period Adjustment

In accordance with the adoption of GASB No. 75 in the current fiscal year, the District must record its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability related to its contributions to TRS-Care cost-sharing other than pension plan at the beginning of the measurement period ending August 31, 2017. In addition, the District must record a deferred outflow of resources for its contributions to TRS-Care from the beginning of the measurement period through June 30, 2017. The effect of this change in accounting principles is as follows:

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| Beginning Net Position  | \$36,564,464    |
| Prior Period Adjustment - Implementation of GASB 75:                      |                 |
| Net Other than Pension Liability (Measurement Date as of August 31, 2017) | (27,488,552)    |
| Deferred Outflows - District's Contributions made during FY 2017          | 186,151         |
| Recognition of Additional Contribution Adjustment                         | <u>(29,827)</u> |
| Beginning Net Position, as Restated                                       | \$ 9,232,236    |

R. Subsequent Event

On August 20, 2018 the Board of Trustees called for a \$55,000,000 bond election to be held November 6, 2018 for construction, acquisition and equipment of school buildings in the District.

**MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018**

S. Negative Operating Grants and Contributions – Statement of Activities

Expense activity is required to be recorded by districts who are participants in cost-sharing pension and OPEB benefit plans with a special funding situation where non-employer contributing entities (NECE) also participate in contributions to the plans. TRS-retirement and TRS-care benefit plans are both cost-sharing plans with special funding situations. Therefore, on-behalf expense activity of the NECE must be recorded at the government-wide level of reporting on the Statement of Activities in accordance with GASB 68 and 75.

During the year under audit, the NECE expense was negative due to changes in benefits within the TRS-care plan. The accrual for the proportionate share of that expense was a negative on-behalf revenue and negative on-behalf expense. This resulted in negative revenue for operation grants and contributions on the Statement of Activities. According to guidance provided directly from GASB, this is the correct reporting.

Following are the effects on the Statement of Activities as a result of the negative on-behalf accruals recorded:

|   | Operating<br>Grants and<br>Contributions | Negative<br>On-Behalf<br>Accruals | Operating<br>Grants and<br>Contributions<br>(excluding on-<br>Behalf Accruals) |
|---|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| 11 - Instruction                                      | \$ (999,564)                             | \$ (4,321,172)                    | \$ 3,321,608   |
| 12 - Instructional Resources and Media Services       | (61,256)                                 | (73,764)                          | 12,508   |
| 13 - Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development     | 280,144                                  | (38,925)                          | 319,069  |
| 21 - Instructional Leadersuip                         | (19,098)                                 | (201,233)                         | 182,135  |
| 23 - School Leadership                                | (362,659)                                | (436,709)                         | 74,050   |
| 31 - Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services     | (191,066)                                | (230,078)                         | 39,012   |
| 32 - Social Work Services                             | (8,627)                                  | (10,388)                          | 1,761  |
| 33 - Health Services                                  | (81,949)                                 | (109,237)                         | 27,288   |
| 34 - Student (Pupil) Transportation                   | (227,707)                                | (355,819)                         | 128,112  |
| 35 - Food Services                                    | 1,770,699                                | -                                 | 1,770,699  |
| 36 - Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities          | (123,429)                                | (168,398)                         | 44,969   |
| 41 - General Administration                           | (181,751)                                | (218,862)                         | 37,111   |
| 51 - Plant Maintenance and Operations                 | (539,017)                                | (649,076)                         | 110,059  |
| 52 - Security and Monitoring Services                 | (12,752)                                 | (15,356)                          | 2,604  |
| 53 - Data Processing Services                         | (134,619)                                | (162,107)                         | 27,488   |
| 61 - Community Services                               | 1,009                                    | (10,485)                          | 11,494   |
| 93 - Payments Related to Shared Services Arrangements | 672,941                                  | -                                 | 672,941  |
|   | <u>\$ (218,701)</u>                      | <u>\$ (7,001,609)</u>             | <u>\$ 6,782,908</u>  |

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

## Required Supplementary Information

Required supplementary information includes financial information and disclosures required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board but not considered a part of the basic financial statements.

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

Budgetary Comparison Schedules  
And the TRS Schedules

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - GENERAL FUND  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes        | Budgeted Amounts  |               | Actual Amounts<br>(GAAP BASIS) | Variance With<br>Final Budget<br>Positive or<br>(Negative) |            |
|---------------------------------|---|---------------|--------------------------------|--|------------|
|                                 | Original  | Final         |                                |  |            |
| REVENUES:                       |   |               |                                |  |            |
| 5700                            | Total Local and Intermediate Sources                      | \$ 36,667,813 | \$ 38,056,197                  | \$ 38,352,045  | \$ 295,848 |
| 5800                            | State Program Revenues                                    | 4,280,268     | 4,386,815                      | 4,539,255  | 152,440    |
| 5900                            | Federal Program Revenues                                  | 890,000       | 792,450                        | 769,113  | (23,337)   |
| 5020                            | Total Revenues  | 41,838,081    | 43,235,462                     | 43,660,413   | 424,951    |
| EXPENDITURES:                   |   |               |                                |  |            |
| Current:                        |   |               |                                |  |            |
| 0011                            | Instruction   | 20,604,121    | 20,769,342                     | 20,666,735   | 102,607    |
| 0012                            | Instructional Resources and Media Services                | 451,603       | 446,003                        | 443,995  | 2,008      |
| 0013                            | Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development            | 295,678       | 381,861                        | 343,145  | 38,716     |
| 0021                            | Instructional Leadership                                  | 1,015,981     | 1,030,252                      | 1,026,081  | 4,171      |
| 0023                            | School Leadership   | 2,121,092     | 2,289,118                      | 2,275,630  | 13,488     |
| 0031                            | Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services              | 1,152,140     | 1,165,378                      | 1,160,548  | 4,830      |
| 0032                            | Social Work Services                                      | 50,412        | 64,822                         | 63,450   | 1,372      |
| 0033                            | Health Services   | 384,749       | 398,910                        | 394,064  | 4,846      |
| 0034                            | Student (Pupil) Transportation                            | 1,759,622     | 2,075,249                      | 2,026,938  | 48,311     |
| 0036                            | Extracurricular Activities                                | 1,577,279     | 1,580,161                      | 1,571,791  | 8,370      |
| 0041                            | General Administration                                    | 1,373,728     | 1,482,764                      | 1,478,107  | 4,657      |
| 0051                            | Facilities Maintenance and Operations                     | 4,512,223     | 4,906,466                      | 4,834,320  | 72,146     |
| 0052                            | Security and Monitoring Services                          | 130,112       | 133,668                        | 132,213  | 1,455      |
| 0053                            | Data Processing Services                                  | 1,170,313     | 2,333,457                      | 2,023,316  | 310,141    |
| 0061                            | Community Services  | 57,114        | 62,331                         | 41,498   | 20,833     |
| Debt Service:                   |   |               |                                |  |            |
| 0071                            | Principal on Long Term Debt                               | -             | 289,585                        | 184,034  | 105,551    |
| Intergovernmental:              |   |               |                                |  |            |
| 0091                            | Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools         | 4,521,914     | 4,993,834                      | 4,901,452  | 92,382     |
| 0099                            | Other Intergovernmental Charges                           | 660,000       | 680,039                        | 679,971  | 68         |
| 6030                            | Total Expenditures  | 41,838,081    | 45,083,240                     | 44,247,288   | 835,952    |
| 1100                            | Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures | -             | (1,847,778)                    | (586,875)  | 1,260,903  |
| OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES): |   |               |                                |  |            |
| 7912                            | Sale of Real and Personal Property                        | -             | 1,875                          | 1,875  | -          |
| 7913                            | Capital Leases  | -             | 864,640                        | 549,640  | (315,000)  |
| 8911                            | Transfers Out (Use)                                       | -             | (829,141)                      | (824,141)  | 5,000      |
| 7080                            | Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)                      | -             | 37,374                         | (272,626)  | (310,000)  |
| 1200                            | Net Change in Fund Balances                               | -             | (1,810,405)                    | (859,501)  | 950,904    |
| 0100                            | Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)                         | 13,980,959    | 13,980,959                     | 13,980,959   | -          |
| 3000                            | Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)                           | \$ 13,980,959 | \$ 12,170,554                  | \$ 13,121,458  | \$ 950,904 |



MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

|  | FY 2018<br>Plan Year 2017 | FY 2017<br>Plan Year 2016 | FY 2016<br>Plan Year 2015 | FY 2015<br>Plan Year 2014 |
|--|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| District's Proportion of the Net Pension Liability (Asset)   | 0.0242298%                | 0.024484%                 | 0.025348%                 | 0.0178188%                |
| District's Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability (Asset)  | \$ 7,747,371              | \$ 9,252,132              | \$ 8,960,181              | \$ 4,759,648              |
| State's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) associated with the District              | 14,122,645                | 16,310,985                | 15,868,236                | 13,550,181                |
| Total  | \$ 21,870,016             | \$ 25,563,117             | \$ 24,828,417             | \$ 18,309,829             |
| District's Covered Payroll   | \$ 27,440,348             | \$ 26,409,814             | \$ 25,704,660             | \$ 25,320,041             |
| District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered Payroll | 28.23%                    | 35.03%                    | 34.86%                    | 18.80%                    |
| Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total Pension Liability                                 | 82.17%                    | 78.00%                    | 78.43%                    | 83.25%                    |

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the information on this schedule be data from the period corresponding with the periods covered as of the measurement dates of August 31, 2017 for year 2018, August 31, 2016 for Year 2017, August 31, 2015 for Year 2016 and August 31, 2014 for 2015.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only four years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PENSIONS  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR FISCAL YEAR 2018

|   | 2018          | 2017          | 2016          | 2015          |
|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| Contractually Required Contribution                                 | \$ 794,110    | \$ 772,853    | \$ 775,653    | \$ 695,924    |
| Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution | 794,110       | 772,853       | 775,653       | 695,924       |
| Contribution Deficiency (Excess)                                    | \$ -0-        | \$ -0-        | \$ -0-        | \$ -0-        |
| District's Covered Payroll  | \$ 28,920,646 | \$ 27,322,802 | \$ 26,203,818 | \$ 25,618,009 |
| Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll                    | 2.75%         | 2.83%         | 2.96%         | 2.72%         |

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 of the preceding year.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only four years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET OPEB LIABILITY  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

|   | <u>FY 2018</u><br><u>Plan Year 2017</u> |
|---|---|
| District's Proportion of the Net Liability (Asset) for Other Post Employment Benefits                         | 0.0358051%                              |
| District's Proportionate Share of Net Post Employment Benefit Liability (Asset)                               | \$ 15,570,285                           |
| State's Proportionate Share of the Net Post Employment Benefit Liability (Asset) associated with the District | 20,923,648                              |
| Total   | <u>\$ 36,493,933</u>                    |
| District's Covered Payroll  | \$ 27,440,348                           |
| District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered Payroll       | 56.74%                                  |
| Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total OPEB Liability                                       | 0.91%                                   |

Note: GASB Codification, Vol. 2, P50.238 states that the information on this schedule should be determined as of the measurement date. Therefore the amounts reported for FY 2018 are based on the August 31, 2017 measurement date.

This schedule shows only the year for which this information is available. Additional information will be added until 10 years of data are available and reported.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS FOR OTHER POST EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

|   | <u>2018</u>   |
|---|---------------|
| Contractually Required Contribution                                 | \$ 186,151    |
| Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution | 186,151       |
| Contribution Deficiency (Excess)                                    | <u>\$ -0-</u> |
| District's Covered Payroll  | \$ 28,920,646 |
| Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll                    | 0.64%         |

Note: GASB Codification, Vol. 2, P50.238 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 of the preceding year..

Information in this schedule should be provided only for the years where data is available. Eventually 10 years of data should be presented.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY  
INFORMATION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Budget

The official budget was prepared for adoption for all Governmental Fund Types. The budget was prepared in accordance with accounting practices generally accepted in the United States of America. The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data.:

- a. Prior to June 20 of the preceding fiscal year, the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
- b. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget after ten days' public notice of the meeting has been given.
- c. Prior to the beginning of the fiscal year, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board.

Once a budget is approved, it can be amended at function and fund level only by approval of a majority of the members of the Board. Amendments are presented to the Board at its regular meetings.

Each amendment must have Board approval. Such amendments are made before the fact, are reflected in the official minutes of the Board and are not made after fiscal year end as required by law.

Each amendment is controlled by the budget coordinator at the revenue and expenditure function/object level. Budgeted amounts are as amended by the Board. All budget appropriations lapse at year end.

Encumbrances for goods or purchased services are documented by purchase orders or contracts. Under Texas law, appropriations lapse at August 31, and encumbrances outstanding at that time are to be either cancelled or appropriately provided for in the subsequent year's budget. There were no end-of-year outstanding encumbrances that were provided for in the subsequent year's budget.

Defined Benefit Pension Plan

Changes of benefit terms

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

Changes of assumptions

There were no changes of assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

## Combining Statements and Budget Comparisons as Supplementary Information.

This supplementary information includes financial statements and schedules not required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, nor a part of the basic financial statements, but are presented for purposes of additional analysis.

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

## Nonmajor Governmental Funds



MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes   |  | 211<br>ESEA I, A<br>Improving<br>Basic Program | 224<br>IDEA - Part B<br>Formula | 225<br>IDEA - Part B<br>Preschool | 226<br>IDEA - Part B<br>Discretionary<br>High Cost |
|----------------------------|--|--|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>ASSETS</b>              |  |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 1110                       | Cash and Cash Equivalents                      | \$ -   | \$ -                            | \$ -                              | \$ -   |
| 1240                       | Receivables from Other Governments             | 190,280  | 185,781                         | 5,084                             | 62,669   |
| 1260                       | Due from Other Funds                           | -  | 1,395                           | -                                 | -  |
| 1300                       | Inventories                                    | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 1000                       | Total Assets                                   | <u>\$ 190,280</u>                              | <u>\$ 187,176</u>               | <u>\$ 5,084</u>                   | <u>\$ 62,669</u>                                   |
| <b>LIABILITIES</b>         |  |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 2110                       | Accounts Payable                               | \$ -   | \$ 449                          | \$ -                              | \$ -   |
| 2120                       | Short Term Debt Payable - Current              | 563  | 467                             | -                                 | -  |
| 2150                       | Payroll Deductions and Withholdings Payable    | 8,761  | 8,274                           | -                                 | -  |
| 2160                       | Accrued Wages Payable                          | 106,030  | 83,958                          | -                                 | -  |
| 2170                       | Due to Other Funds                             | 74,333   | 93,997                          | 5,084                             | 62,669   |
| 2180                       | Due to Other Governments                       | 593  | 31                              | -                                 | -  |
| 2300                       | Unearned Revenues                              | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 2000                       | Total Liabilities                              | <u>190,280</u>                                 | <u>187,176</u>                  | <u>5,084</u>                      | <u>62,669</u>                                      |
| <b>FUND BALANCES</b>       |  |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| Nonspendable Fund Balance: |  |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 3410                       | Inventories                                    | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| Restricted Fund Balance:   |  |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 3450                       | Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction       | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 3470                       | Capital Acquisition and Contractual Obligation | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 3490                       | Other Restricted Fund Balance                  | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| Committed Fund Balance:    |  |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 3545                       | Other Committed Fund Balance                   | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 3000                       | Total Fund Balances                            | <u>-</u>                                       | <u>-</u>                        | <u>-</u>                          | <u>-</u>   |
| 4000                       | Total Liabilities and Fund Balances            | <u>\$ 190,280</u>                              | <u>\$ 187,176</u>               | <u>\$ 5,084</u>                   | <u>\$ 62,669</u>                                   |

## EXHIBIT H-1 (Cont'd)

| 240<br>National<br>Breakfast and<br>Lunch Program | 242<br>Summer<br>Feeding<br>Program | 244<br>Career and<br>Technical -<br>Basic Grant | 255<br>ESEA II, A<br>Training and<br>Recruiting | 263<br>Title III, A<br>English Lang.<br>Acquisition | 270<br>ESEA VI, Pt B<br>Rural & Low<br>Income | 272<br>Medicaid<br>Admin. Claim<br>MAC | 289<br>Title IV, A<br>Subpart 1 |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|--|---------------------------------|
| \$ 436,464  | \$ 42,622                           | \$ -  | \$ -  | \$ -  | \$ 18,449                                     | \$ 19,878                              | \$ 14,866                       |
| -   | 21,530                              | 3,087   | 25,213  | 13,354  | 15,596  | -                                      | -                               |
| 48,242  | 4,985                               | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| 49,271  | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| <u>\$ 533,977</u>                                 | <u>\$ 69,137</u>                    | <u>\$ 3,087</u>                                 | <u>\$ 25,213</u>                                | <u>\$ 13,354</u>                                    | <u>\$ 34,045</u>                              | <u>\$ 19,878</u>                       | <u>\$ 14,866</u>                |
| \$ 1,047  | \$ 2,639                            | \$ -  | \$ -  | \$ 977  | \$ -  | \$ -                                   | \$ -                            |
| -   | -                                   | -   | 80  | 40  | 48  | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | 856   | 168   | 742   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | 15,001  | 7,617   | 9,067   | -                                      | -                               |
| 4,985   | 39,894                              | 3,087   | 9,276   | 4,552   | 24,188  | 19,878                                 | 3,561                           |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| 3,656   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| <u>9,688</u>                                      | <u>42,533</u>                       | <u>3,087</u>                                    | <u>25,213</u>                                   | <u>13,354</u>                                       | <u>34,045</u>                                 | <u>19,878</u>                          | <u>3,561</u>                    |
| 49,271  | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| 475,018   | 26,604                              | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | 11,305                          |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| <u>524,289</u>                                    | <u>26,604</u>                       | <u>-</u>  | <u>-</u>  | <u>-</u>  | <u>-</u>                                      | <u>-</u>                               | <u>11,305</u>                   |
| <u>\$ 533,977</u>                                 | <u>\$ 69,137</u>                    | <u>\$ 3,087</u>                                 | <u>\$ 25,213</u>                                | <u>\$ 13,354</u>                                    | <u>\$ 34,045</u>                              | <u>\$ 19,878</u>                       | <u>\$ 14,866</u>                |

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes   |  | 352<br>SSA - 21st<br>Century<br>Learning | 385<br>Visually<br>Impaired<br>SSVI | 397<br>Advanced<br>Placement<br>Incentives | 410<br>State<br>Textbook<br>Fund |
|----------------------------|--|--|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| <b>ASSETS</b>              |  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 1110                       | Cash and Cash Equivalents                      | \$ -                                     | \$ 1,750                            | \$ 7,039                                   | \$ 2,254                         |
| 1240                       | Receivables from Other Governments             | 224,935                                  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 1260                       | Due from Other Funds                           | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 1300                       | Inventories                                    | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 1000                       | Total Assets                                   | <u>\$ 224,935</u>                        | <u>\$ 1,750</u>                     | <u>\$ 7,039</u>                            | <u>\$ 2,254</u>                  |
| <b>LIABILITIES</b>         |  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 2110                       | Accounts Payable                               | \$ 73,076                                | \$ -                                | \$ -                                       | \$ -                             |
| 2120                       | Short Term Debt Payable - Current              | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 2150                       | Payroll Deductions and Withholdings Payable    | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 2160                       | Accrued Wages Payable                          | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 2170                       | Due to Other Funds                             | 151,859                                  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 2180                       | Due to Other Governments                       | -  | -                                   | -  | 122                              |
| 2300                       | Unearned Revenues                              | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 2000                       | Total Liabilities                              | <u>224,935</u>                           | <u>-</u>                            | <u>-</u>                                   | <u>122</u>                       |
| <b>FUND BALANCES</b>       |  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| Nonspendable Fund Balance: |  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 3410                       | Inventories                                    | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| Restricted Fund Balance:   |  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 3450                       | Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction       | -  | -                                   | 7,039                                      | 2,132                            |
| 3470                       | Capital Acquisition and Contractual Obligation | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 3490                       | Other Restricted Fund Balance                  | -  | 1,750                               | -  | -                                |
| Committed Fund Balance:    |  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 3545                       | Other Committed Fund Balance                   | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 3000                       | Total Fund Balances                            | <u>-</u>                                 | <u>1,750</u>                        | <u>7,039</u>                               | <u>2,132</u>                     |
| 4000                       | Total Liabilities and Fund Balances            | <u>\$ 224,935</u>                        | <u>\$ 1,750</u>                     | <u>\$ 7,039</u>                            | <u>\$ 2,254</u>                  |

## EXHIBIT H-1 (Cont'd)

| 427<br>Pre K Grant | 429<br>Achievement<br>Academy | 461<br>Campus<br>Activity<br>Funds | Total<br>Nonmajor<br>Special<br>Revenue Funds | 622<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - CATE | 634<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Transp | 636<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Band | 651<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Maint |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|--|
| \$ -               | \$ 269                        | \$ 194,814                         | \$ 738,405                                    | \$ -                                      | \$ -  | \$ -                                      | \$ 280,990                                 |
| 1,600              | -                             | -                                  | 749,129                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | 16                            | -                                  | 54,638  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 49,271  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| <u>\$ 1,600</u>    | <u>\$ 285</u>                 | <u>\$ 194,814</u>                  | <u>\$ 1,591,443</u>                           | <u>\$ -</u>                               | <u>\$ -</u>                                 | <u>\$ -</u>                               | <u>\$ 280,990</u>                          |
| \$ 1,600           | \$ -                          | \$ 1,829                           | \$ 81,617                                     | \$ -                                      | \$ -  | \$ -                                      | \$ 221,520                                 |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 1,198   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 18,801  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 221,673                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | 2,449                              | 499,812                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 746   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | 24                            | -                                  | 3,680   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| <u>1,600</u>       | <u>24</u>                     | <u>4,278</u>                       | <u>827,527</u>                                | <u>-</u>                                  | <u>-</u>                                    | <u>-</u>                                  | <u>221,520</u>                             |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 49,271  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | 261                           | -                                  | 522,359                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | -   | -   | -   | -   | 59,470                                     |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 1,750   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | 190,536                            | 190,536                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | 261                           | 190,536                            | 763,916                                       | -   | -   | -   | 59,470                                     |
| <u>\$ 1,600</u>    | <u>\$ 285</u>                 | <u>\$ 194,814</u>                  | <u>\$ 1,591,443</u>                           | <u>\$ -</u>                               | <u>\$ -</u>                                 | <u>\$ -</u>                               | <u>\$ 280,990</u>                          |

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes   |  | 653<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Tech | 699<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund | Total<br>Nonmajor<br>Capital<br>Project Funds | Total<br>Nonmajor<br>Governmental<br>Funds |
|----------------------------|--|---|------------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>ASSETS</b>              |  |   |                                    |   |  |
| 1110                       | Cash and Cash Equivalents                      | \$ -                                      | \$ 20,104                          | \$ 301,094                                    | \$ 1,039,499                               |
| 1240                       | Receivables from Other Governments             | -   | -                                  | -   | 749,129                                    |
| 1260                       | Due from Other Funds                           | -   | -                                  | -   | 54,638                                     |
| 1300                       | Inventories                                    | -   | -                                  | -   | 49,271                                     |
| 1000                       | Total Assets                                   | <u>\$ -</u>                               | <u>\$ 20,104</u>                   | <u>\$ 301,094</u>                             | <u>\$ 1,892,537</u>                        |
| <b>LIABILITIES</b>         |  |   |                                    |   |  |
| 2110                       | Accounts Payable                               | \$ -                                      | \$ -                               | \$ 221,520                                    | \$ 303,137                                 |
| 2120                       | Short Term Debt Payable - Current              | -   | -                                  | -   | 1,198                                      |
| 2150                       | Payroll Deductions and Withholdings Payable    | -   | -                                  | -   | 18,801                                     |
| 2160                       | Accrued Wages Payable                          | -   | -                                  | -   | 221,673                                    |
| 2170                       | Due to Other Funds                             | -   | -                                  | -   | 499,812                                    |
| 2180                       | Due to Other Governments                       | -   | -                                  | -   | 746  |
| 2300                       | Unearned Revenues                              | -   | -                                  | -   | 3,680                                      |
| 2000                       | Total Liabilities                              | <u>-</u>                                  | <u>-</u>                           | <u>221,520</u>                                | <u>1,049,047</u>                           |
| <b>FUND BALANCES</b>       |  |   |                                    |   |  |
| Nonspendable Fund Balance: |  |   |                                    |   |  |
| 3410                       | Inventories                                    | -   | -                                  | -   | 49,271                                     |
| Restricted Fund Balance:   |  |   |                                    |   |  |
| 3450                       | Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction       | -   | -                                  | -   | 522,359                                    |
| 3470                       | Capital Acquisition and Contractual Obligation | -   | 20,104                             | 79,574  | 79,574                                     |
| 3490                       | Other Restricted Fund Balance                  | -   | -                                  | -   | 1,750                                      |
| Committed Fund Balance:    |  |   |                                    |   |  |
| 3545                       | Other Committed Fund Balance                   | -   | -                                  | -   | 190,536                                    |
| 3000                       | Total Fund Balances                            | <u>-</u>                                  | <u>20,104</u>                      | <u>79,574</u>                                 | <u>843,490</u>                             |
| 4000                       | Total Liabilities and Fund Balances            | <u>\$ -</u>                               | <u>\$ 20,104</u>                   | <u>\$ 301,094</u>                             | <u>\$ 1,892,537</u>                        |

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes                                       | 211<br>ESEA I, A<br>Improving<br>Basic Program | 224<br>IDEA - Part B<br>Formula | 225<br>IDEA - Part B<br>Preschool | 226<br>IDEA - Part B<br>Discretionary<br>High Cost |
|--|--|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>REVENUES:</b>   |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources                      | \$ -   | \$ -                            | \$ -                              | \$ -   |
| 5800 State Program Revenues                                    | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 5900 Federal Program Revenues                                  | 881,398  | 807,507                         | 19,358                            | 62,669   |
| 5020 Total Revenues  | 881,398  | 807,507                         | 19,358                            | 62,669   |
| <b>EXPENDITURES:</b>   |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| Current:   |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 0011 Instruction   | 812,871  | 800,618                         | 19,358                            | 62,669   |
| 0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services                | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development            | 68,527   | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0021 Instructional Leadership                                  | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0023 School Leadership   | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services              | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0033 Health Services   | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation                            | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0035 Food Services   | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0036 Extracurricular Activities                                | -  | 9,639                           | -                                 | -  |
| 0041 General Administration                                    | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations                     | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0052 Security and Monitoring Services                          | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 0061 Community Services  | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| Capital Outlay:  |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction                   | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| Intergovernmental:   |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA          | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 6030 Total Expenditures  | 881,398  | 810,257                         | 19,358                            | 62,669   |
| 1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures | -  | (2,750)                         | -                                 | -  |
| <b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>                         |  |                                 |                                   |  |
| 7915 Transfers In  | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 8911 Transfers Out (Use)                                       | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)                      | -  | -                               | -                                 | -  |
| 1200 Net Change in Fund Balance                                | -  | (2,750)                         | -                                 | -  |
| 0100 Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)                         | -  | 2,750                           | -                                 | -  |
| 3000 Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)                           | \$ -   | \$ -                            | \$ -                              | \$ -   |

| 240<br>National<br>Breakfast and<br>Lunch Program | 242<br>Summer<br>Feeding<br>Program | 244<br>Career and<br>Technical -<br>Basic Grant | 255<br>ESEA II, A<br>Training and<br>Recruiting | 263<br>Title III, A<br>English Lang.<br>Acquisition | 270<br>ESEA VI, Pt B<br>Rural & Low<br>Income | 272<br>Medicaid<br>Admin. Claim<br>MAC | 289<br>Title IV, A<br>Subpart I |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|--|---------------------------------|
| \$ 662,331<br>12,390<br>1,694,523<br>2,369,244    | \$ -<br>-<br>63,786<br>63,786       | \$ -<br>-<br>42,534<br>42,534                   | \$ -<br>-<br>108,696<br>108,696                 | \$ -<br>-<br>64,181<br>64,181                       | \$ -<br>-<br>73,276<br>73,276                 | \$ -<br>-<br>8,765<br>8,765            | -<br>-<br>10,968<br>10,968      |
| -   | -                                   | 26,027  | 105,196   | 53,151  | 66,426  | -                                      | 9,168                           |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | 8,933   | 3,500   | 13,918  | 6,850   | -                                      | 1,800                           |
| -   | -                                   | 798   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | 8,765                                  | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| 2,487,776   | 37,182                              | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | 6,776   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| 2,487,776   | 37,182                              | 42,534  | 108,696   | 67,069  | 73,276  | 8,765                                  | 10,968                          |
| (118,532)   | 26,604                              | -   | -   | (2,888)   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| -   | -                                   | -   | -   | -   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| (118,532)   | 26,604                              | -   | -   | (2,888)   | -   | -                                      | -                               |
| 642,821   | -                                   | -   | -   | 2,888   | -   | -                                      | 11,305                          |
| \$ 524,289  | \$ 26,604                           | \$ -  | \$ -  | \$ -  | \$ -  | \$ -                                   | 11,305                          |



MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes                                       | 352<br>SSA - 21st<br>Century Comm.<br>Learning | 385<br>Visually<br>Impaired<br>SSVI | 397<br>Advanced<br>Placement<br>Incentives | 410<br>State<br>Textbook<br>Fund |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| REVENUES:  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources                      | \$ -   | \$ -                                | \$ -                                       | \$ -                             |
| 5800 State Program Revenues                                    | -  | -                                   | -  | 45,449                           |
| 5900 Federal Program Revenues                                  | 1,683,411                                      | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 5020 Total Revenues  | 1,683,411                                      | -                                   | -  | 45,449                           |
| EXPENDITURES:  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| Current:   |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 0011 Instruction   | 577,704  | -                                   | -  | 45,449                           |
| 0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services                | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development            | 208,056  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0021 Instructional Leadership                                  | 147,216  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0023 School Leadership   | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services              | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0033 Health Services   | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation                            | 67,778   | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0035 Food Services   | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0036 Extracurricular Activities                                | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0041 General Administration                                    | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations                     | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0052 Security and Monitoring Services                          | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0061 Community Services  | 9,716  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| Capital Outlay:  |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction                   | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| Intergovernmental:   |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA          | 672,941  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 6030 Total Expenditures  | 1,683,411                                      | -                                   | -  | 45,449                           |
| 1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):                                |  |                                     |  |                                  |
| 7915 Transfers In  | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 8911 Transfers Out (Use)                                       | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)                      | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 1200 Net Change in Fund Balance                                | -  | -                                   | -  | -                                |
| 0100 Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)                         | -  | 1,750                               | 7,039                                      | 2,132                            |
| 3000 Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)                           | \$ -   | \$ 1,750                            | \$ 7,039                                   | \$ 2,132                         |

| 427<br>Pre K Grant | 429<br>Achievement<br>Academy | 461<br>Campus<br>Activity<br>Funds | Total<br>Nonmajor<br>Special<br>Revenue Funds | 622<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - CATE | 634<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Transp | 636<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Band | 651<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Maint |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|--|
| \$ -               | \$ -                          | \$ 204,490                         | \$ 866,821                                    | \$ -                                      | \$ -  | \$ -                                      | \$ -                                       |
| 10,134             | 6,650                         | -                                  | 74,623  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 5,521,072                                     | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| 10,134             | 6,650                         | 204,490                            | 6,462,516                                     | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| 9,250              | 6,650                         | 139,119                            | 2,733,656                                     | 18,622                                    | -   | -   | 100  |
| -                  | -                             | 54,368                             | 54,368  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| 884                | -                             | -                                  | 312,468                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 148,014                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | 22,140                             | 22,140  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | 8,344                              | 8,344   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | 1,103                              | 9,868   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 67,778  | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 2,524,958                                     | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | 2,114                              | 18,529  | -   | -   | 281,000                                   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | 2,025                              | 2,025   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | -   | -   | -   | -   | 251,293                                    |
| -                  | -                             | 3,598                              | 3,598   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 9,716   | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | -   | -   | -   | -   | 775,342                                    |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | 672,941                                       | -   | -   | -   | -  |
| 10,134             | 6,650                         | 232,811                            | 6,588,403                                     | 18,622                                    | -   | 281,000                                   | 1,026,735                                  |
| -                  | -                             | (28,321)                           | (125,887)                                     | (18,622)                                  | -   | (281,000)                                 | (1,026,735)                                |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | -   | -   | 165,206                                     | 246,790                                   | 616,985                                    |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | -   | (140,097)                                 | -   | -   | -  |
| -                  | -                             | -                                  | -   | (140,097)                                 | 165,206                                     | 246,790                                   | 616,985                                    |
| -                  | -                             | (28,321)                           | (125,887)                                     | (158,719)                                 | 165,206                                     | (34,210)                                  | (409,750)                                  |
| -                  | 261                           | 218,857                            | 889,803                                       | 158,719                                   | (165,206)                                   | 34,210                                    | 469,220                                    |
| \$ -               | \$ 261                        | \$ 190,536                         | \$ 763,916                                    | \$ -                                      | \$ -  | \$ -                                      | \$ 59,470                                  |

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes                                       | 653<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund - Tech | 699<br>Capital<br>Projects<br>Fund | Total<br>Nonmajor<br>Capital<br>Project Funds | Total<br>Nonmajor<br>Governmental<br>Funds |
|--|---|------------------------------------|---|--|
| REVENUES:  |   |                                    |   |  |
| 5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources                      | \$ -                                      | \$ 1,822                           | \$ 1,822                                      | \$ 868,643                                 |
| 5800 State Program Revenues                                    | -   | -                                  | -   | 74,623                                     |
| 5900 Federal Program Revenues                                  | -   | -                                  | -   | 5,521,072                                  |
| 5020 Total Revenues  | -   | 1,822                              | 1,822   | 6,464,338                                  |
| EXPENDITURES:  |   |                                    |   |  |
| Current:   |   |                                    |   |  |
| 0011 Instruction   | -   | -                                  | 18,722  | 2,752,378                                  |
| 0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services                | -   | -                                  | -   | 54,368                                     |
| 0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development            | -   | -                                  | -   | 312,468                                    |
| 0021 Instructional Leadership                                  | -   | -                                  | -   | 148,014                                    |
| 0023 School Leadership   | -   | -                                  | -   | 22,140                                     |
| 0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services              | -   | -                                  | -   | 8,344                                      |
| 0033 Health Services   | -   | -                                  | -   | 9,868                                      |
| 0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation                            | -   | -                                  | -   | 67,778                                     |
| 0035 Food Services   | -   | -                                  | -   | 2,524,958                                  |
| 0036 Extracurricular Activities                                | -   | -                                  | 281,000                                       | 299,529                                    |
| 0041 General Administration                                    | -   | -                                  | -   | 2,025                                      |
| 0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations                     | -   | -                                  | 251,293                                       | 251,293                                    |
| 0052 Security and Monitoring Services                          | -   | -                                  | -   | 3,598                                      |
| 0061 Community Services  | -   | -                                  | -   | 9,716                                      |
| Capital Outlay:  |   |                                    |   |  |
| 0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction                   | -   | -                                  | 775,342                                       | 775,342                                    |
| Intergovernmental:   |   |                                    |   |  |
| 0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA          | -   | -                                  | -   | 672,941                                    |
| 6030 Total Expenditures  | -   | -                                  | 1,326,357                                     | 7,914,760                                  |
| 1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures | -   | 1,822                              | (1,324,535)                                   | (1,450,422)                                |
| OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):                                |   |                                    |   |  |
| 7915 Transfers In  | -   | -                                  | 1,028,981                                     | 1,028,981                                  |
| 8911 Transfers Out (Use)                                       | (64,743)                                  | -                                  | (204,840)                                     | (204,840)                                  |
| 7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)                      | (64,743)                                  | -                                  | 824,141                                       | 824,141                                    |
| 1200 Net Change in Fund Balance                                | (64,743)                                  | 1,822                              | (500,394)                                     | (626,281)                                  |
| 0100 Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)                         | 64,743                                    | 18,282                             | 579,968                                       | 1,469,771                                  |
| 3000 Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)                           | \$ -                                      | \$ 20,104                          | \$ 79,574                                     | \$ 843,490                                 |

## Other Supplementary Information

This section includes financial information and disclosures not required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board and not considered a part of the basic financial statements. It may, however, include information which is required by other entities.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

| Last 10 Years                  | (1)         | (2)          | (3)  |
|--------------------------------|-------------|--------------|--|
|                                | Tax Rates   |              | Assessed/Appraised<br>Value for School<br>Tax Purposes |
|                                | Maintenance | Debt Service |  |
| 2009 and prior years           | Various     | Various      | \$ Various   |
| 2010                           | 1.040000    | 0.245000     | 2,865,855,749  |
| 2011                           | 1.040000    | 0.250000     | 2,855,639,845  |
| 2012                           | 1.053300    | 0.250000     | 2,857,119,070  |
| 2013                           | 1.053300    | 0.226700     | 2,940,462,613  |
| 2014                           | 1.053300    | 0.226700     | 2,945,172,530  |
| 2015                           | 1.053300    | 0.226700     | 3,026,438,979  |
| 2016                           | 1.053300    | 0.226700     | 3,147,882,146  |
| 2017                           | 1.053300    | 0.226700     | 3,271,825,078  |
| 2018 (School year under audit) | 1.053300    | 0.225300     | 3,518,724,855  |
| 1000 TOTALS                    |             |              |  |

| (10)<br>Beginning<br>Balance<br>7/1/2017 | (20)<br>Current<br>Year's<br>Total Levy | (31)<br>Maintenance<br>Collections | (32)<br>Debt Service<br>Collections | (40)<br>Entire<br>Year's<br>Adjustments | (50)<br>Ending<br>Balance<br>6/30/2018 |
|--|---|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| \$ 305,397                               | \$ -                                    | \$ 34,559                          | \$ 5,544                            | \$ (15,597)                             | \$ 249,697                             |
| 84,297                                   | -                                       | 10,813                             | 2,541                               | (3,346)                                 | 67,597                                 |
| 95,756                                   | -                                       | 15,295                             | 3,676                               | (3,821)                                 | 72,964                                 |
| 118,121                                  | -                                       | 11,667                             | 2,804                               | (4,386)                                 | 99,264                                 |
| 140,063                                  | -                                       | 50,741                             | 10,921                              | 33,397                                  | 111,798                                |
| 146,380                                  | -                                       | 56,562                             | 12,162                              | 36,033                                  | 113,689                                |
| 207,132                                  | -                                       | 68,052                             | 14,644                              | 20,375                                  | 144,811                                |
| 282,664                                  | -                                       | 104,618                            | 22,414                              | 18,059                                  | 173,691                                |
| 836,339                                  | -                                       | 450,387                            | 96,617                              | (6,472)                                 | 282,863                                |
| -  | 44,990,416                              | 36,264,593                         | 7,762,411                           | (108,351)                               | 855,061                                |
| <u>\$ 2,216,149</u>                      | <u>\$ 44,990,416</u>                    | <u>\$ 37,067,287</u>               | <u>\$ 7,933,734</u>                 | <u>\$ (34,109)</u>                      | <u>\$ 2,171,435</u>                    |

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - CHILD NUTRITION PROGRAM  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes |                                      | Budgeted Amounts |            | Actual Amounts<br>(GAAP BASIS) | Variance With<br>Final Budget<br>Positive or<br>(Negative) |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|------------|--------------------------------|--|
|                          |                                      | Original         | Final      |                                |  |
| REVENUES:                |                                      |                  |            |                                |  |
| 5700                     | Total Local and Intermediate Sources | \$ 695,140       | \$ 660,140 | \$ 662,331                     | \$ 2,191   |
| 5800                     | State Program Revenues               | 11,621           | 11,621     | 12,390                         | 769  |
| 5900                     | Federal Program Revenues             | 1,815,468        | 1,790,468  | 1,694,523                      | (95,945)   |
| 5020                     | Total Revenues                       | 2,522,229        | 2,462,229  | 2,369,244                      | (92,985)   |
| EXPENDITURES:            |                                      |                  |            |                                |  |
| 0035                     | Food Services                        | 2,452,036        | 2,485,036  | 2,487,776                      | (2,740)  |
| 6030                     | Total Expenditures                   | 2,452,036        | 2,485,036  | 2,487,776                      | (2,740)  |
| 1200                     | Net Change in Fund Balances          | 70,193           | (22,807)   | (118,532)                      | (95,725)   |
| 0100                     | Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)    | 642,821          | 642,821    | 642,821                        | -  |
| 3000                     | Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)      | \$ 713,014       | \$ 620,014 | \$ 524,289                     | \$ (95,725)  |

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - DEBT SERVICE FUND  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes                  | Budgeted Amounts |              | Actual Amounts<br>(GAAP BASIS) | Variance With<br>Final Budget<br>Positive or<br>(Negative) |
|---|------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|--|
|   | Original         | Final        |                                |  |
| REVENUES:                                 |                  |              |                                |  |
| 5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources | \$ 7,677,986     | \$ 7,948,326 | \$ 8,147,168                   | \$ 198,842   |
| 5800 State Program Revenues               | 108,975          | 108,975      | 115,381                        | 6,406  |
| 5020 Total Revenues                       | 7,786,961        | 8,057,301    | 8,262,549                      | 205,248  |
| EXPENDITURES:                             |                  |              |                                |  |
| Debt Service:                             |                  |              |                                |  |
| 0071 Principal on Long Term Debt          | 3,205,832        | 3,334,884    | 3,169,544                      | 165,340  |
| 0072 Interest on Long Term Debt           | 3,261,386        | 3,392,674    | 2,951,099                      | 441,575  |
| 0073 Bond Issuance Cost and Fees          | -                | 10,000       | 4,500                          | 5,500  |
| 6030 Total Expenditures                   | 6,467,218        | 6,737,558    | 6,125,143                      | 612,415  |
| 1200 Net Change in Fund Balances          | 1,319,743        | 1,319,743    | 2,137,406                      | 817,663  |
| 0100 Fund Balance - July 1 (Beginning)    | 7,210,839        | 7,210,839    | 7,210,839                      | -  |
| 3000 Fund Balance - June 30 (Ending)      | \$ 8,530,582     | \$ 8,530,582 | \$ 9,348,245                   | \$ 817,663   |



This Page Left Intentionally Blank.

## Federal Awards Section

This Page Left Intentionally Blank.



**LOTT, VERNON & COMPANY, P.C.**  
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

20 SOUTH FOURTH STREET 254/778/4783  
POST OFFICE BOX 160 800/460/4783  
TEMPLE, TEXAS 76503 FAX 254/778/4792

KILLEEN • COPPERAS COVE • TEMPLE

Member of  
American Institute & Texas Society of  
Certified Public Accountants

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER FINANCIAL  
REPORTING AND ON COMPLIANCE AND OTHER MATTERS BASED ON AN  
AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS PERFORMED IN ACCORDANCE WITH  
*GOVERNMENT AUDITING STANDARDS*

Board of Trustees  
Marble Falls Independent School  
District Marble Falls, Texas

Members of the Board:

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in Government Auditing Standards issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Marble Falls Independent School District, as of and for the year ended June 30, 2018, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise Marble Falls Independent School District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated September 21, 2018.

**Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered the Marble Falls Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Marble Falls Independent School District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the Marble Falls Independent School District's internal control.

*A deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER FINANCIAL  
REPORTING AND ON COMPLIANCE AND OTHER MATTERS BASED ON AN  
AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS PERFORMED IN ACCORDANCE WITH  
*GOVERNMENT AUDITING STANDARDS (CONTINUED)*


Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

**Compliance and Other Matters**

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the Marble Falls Independent School District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit, and accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under Government Auditing Standards.

**Purpose of this Report**

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the entity's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.



Temple, Texas  
September 21, 2018



## LOTT, VERNON & COMPANY, P.C.

CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

20 SOUTH FOURTH STREET 254/778/4783  
POST OFFICE BOX 160 800/460/4783  
TEMPLE, TEXAS 76503 FAX 254/778/4792

KILLEEN • COPPERAS COVE • TEMPLE

*Member of  
American Institute & Texas Society of  
Certified Public Accountants*

### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON COMPLIANCE FOR EACH MAJOR PROGRAM AND ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER COMPLIANCE REQUIRED BY THE UNIFORM GUIDANCE

Board of Trustees  
Marble Falls Independent School  
District Marble Falls, Texas

Members of the Board:

#### **Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program**

We have audited the Marble Falls Independent School District's compliance with the types of compliance requirements described in the OMB Compliance Supplement that could have a direct and material effect on Marble Falls Independent School District's major federal program for the year ended June 30, 2018. Marble Falls Independent School District's major federal program is identified in the summary of auditor's results section of the accompanying schedule of findings and questioned costs.

#### **Management's Responsibility**

Management is responsible for compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of its federal awards applicable to its federal programs.

#### **Auditor's Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on compliance for each of Marble Falls Independent School District's major federal programs based on our audit of the types of compliance requirements referred to above. We conducted our audit of compliance in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in Government Auditing Standards, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and the audit requirements of Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards (Uniform Guidance). Those standards and the Uniform Guidance require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether noncompliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on a major federal program occurred. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence about the Marble Falls Independent School District's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT ON COMPLIANCE FOR EACH MAJOR  
PROGRAM AND ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER COMPLIANCE REQUIRED  
BY THE UNIFORM GUIDANCE (CONTINUED)

We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion on compliance for each major federal program. However, our audit does not provide a legal determination of the Marble Falls Independent School District's compliance.

**Opinion on Each Major Federal Program**

In our opinion, the Marble Falls Independent School District complied, in all material respects, with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on its major federal program for the year ended June 30, 2018.


**Report on Internal Control Over Compliance**

Management of the Marble Falls Independent School District is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above. In planning and performing our audit of compliance, we considered the Marble Falls Independent School District's internal control over compliance with the types of requirements that could have a direct and material effect on each major federal program to determine the auditing procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing an opinion on compliance for each major federal program and to test and report on internal control over compliance in accordance with the Uniform Guidance, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the Marble Falls Independent School District's internal control over compliance.

*A deficiency in internal control over compliance* exists when the design or operation of a control over compliance does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program on a timely basis. *A material weakness in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance, such that there is a reasonable possibility that material noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. *A significant deficiency in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program that is less severe than a material weakness in internal control over compliance, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control over compliance was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over compliance that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. We did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over compliance that we considered to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

The purpose of this report on internal control over compliance is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over compliance and the results of that testing based on the requirements of the Uniform Guidance. Accordingly, this report is not suitable for any other purpose.

  
Temple, Texas  
September 21, 2018

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS FOR  
THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

**A. Summary of Auditors' Results**

**1. Financial Statements**

Type of auditors' report issued:

Unmodified

Internal control over financial reporting:

- One or more material weakness(es) identified?        Yes   X   No
- One or more significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses?        Yes   X   None reported
- Noncompliance material to financial statements noted?        Yes   X   No

**2 Federal Awards**

Internal control over major programs:

- One or more material weakness(es) identified?        Yes   X   No
- One or more significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses?        Yes   X   None reported

Type of auditors' report issued on compliance for major programs:

Unmodified

Any audit findings disclosed that are required to be reported in accordance with Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 200?

       Yes   X   No

Identification of Major Programs:

CFDA Number(s)

Name of Federal Program or Cluster

84.010A

ESEA Title I Part A - Improving Basic Programs

84.358

Title VI, Part B, Subpart 2, Rural & Low Income School

84.365

Title III, Part A, English Language Acquisition and Enhancement

84.367

ESEA Title II, Part A, Teacher & Principal Training and Recruiting

Dollar threshold used to distinguish between type A and Type B programs

\$ 750,000

Auditee qualified as low risk auditee?

  X   Yes        No

**B. Financial Statement Findings**

NONE

**C. Federal Award Findings and Questioned Costs**

NONE



MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF PRIOR YEAR FINDINGS AND CORRECTIVE  
ACTION PLAN FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Prior Year Findings:

There were no prior findings relative to Federal Awards.

Corrective Action Taken:

No corrective action plan was required.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS FOR THE YEAR  
ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

EXHIBIT K-1

| (1)<br>FEDERAL GRANTOR/<br>PASS-THROUGH GRANTOR/<br>PROGRAM OR CLUSTER TITLE | (2)<br>Federal<br>CFDA<br>Number | (2A)<br>Pass-Through<br>Entity Identifying<br>Number | (3)<br>Federal<br>Expenditures |
|--|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| <b>U. S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE</b>                                       |                                  |  |                                |
| <u>Passed Through the Texas Department of Agriculture</u>                    |                                  |  |                                |
| Child Nutrition Cluster:   |                                  |  |                                |
| National School Breakfast Program  | 10.553                           | 71401801   | \$ 396,231                     |
| National School Lunch Program  | 10.555                           | 71301801   | 1,112,574                      |
| National School Lunch Program (Donated Commodities)                          | 10.555                           | 027 904  | 185,718                        |
| Total CFDA Number 10.555   |                                  |  | 1,298,292                      |
| Summer Food Service Program, Texas Department of Agriculture                 | 10.559                           | 027 904  | 63,786                         |
| Total Child Nutrition Cluster  |                                  |  | 1,758,309                      |
| Total Passed Through the Texas Department of Agriculture                     |                                  |  | 1,758,309                      |
| Total U.S. Department of Agriculture   |                                  |  | 1,758,309                      |
| <b>U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES</b>                          |                                  |  |                                |
| <u>Direct Programs:</u>  |                                  |  |                                |
| Medicaid Cluster   |                                  |  |                                |
| Medicaid Administrative Claiming Program - MAC                               | 93.778                           | 027 904  | 8,765                          |
| Total Medicaid Cluster   |                                  |  | 8,765                          |
| Total Direct Programs  |                                  |  | 8,765                          |
| Total U.S. Department of Health and Human Services                           |                                  |  | 8,765                          |
| <b>U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION</b>  |                                  |  |                                |
| <u>Passed Through Texas Education Agency</u>                                 |                                  |  |                                |
| ESEA, Title I, Part A - Improving Basic Programs                             | 84.010A                          | 17610101027904                                       | 50,935                         |
| ESEA, Title I, Part A - Improving Basic Programs                             | 84.010A                          | 18610101027904                                       | 787,943                        |
| ESEA Title I -1003 School Improvement  | 84.010A                          | 18610123027904                                       | 40,819                         |
| ESEA Title I, 1003(a) Priority and Focus School Grant                        | 84.010A                          | 17610112027904000                                    | 25,571                         |
| Total CFDA Number 84.010A  |                                  |  | 905,268                        |
| Special Education Cluster  |                                  |  |                                |
| IDEA - Part B, Formula   | 84.027A                          | 176600010279046600                                   | 28,145                         |
| IDEA - Part B, Formula   | 84.027A                          | 186600010279046600                                   | 800,927                        |
| IDEA - Part B, Discretionary   | 84.027A                          | 66001715   | 62,669                         |
| Total CFDA Number 84.027A  |                                  |  | 891,741                        |
| IDEA - Part B, Preschool   | 84.173A                          | 186610010279046610                                   | 19,358                         |
| Total Special Education Cluster  |                                  |  | 911,099                        |
| Career and Technical - Basic Grant   | 84.048A                          | 18420006027904                                       | 42,534                         |
| SSA Title IV Part B 21st Century Community Learning Centers                  | 84.287C                          | 176950197110022                                      | 237,475                        |
| SSA Title IV Part B 21st Century Community Learning Centers                  | 84.287C                          | 186950197110022                                      | 1,458,814                      |
| Total CFDA Number 84.287C  |                                  |  | 1,696,289                      |
| ESEA Title VI, Part B, Subpart 2, Rural and Low Income School                | 84.358B                          | 17696001027904                                       | 10,386                         |
| ESEA Title VI, Part B, Subpart 2, Rural and Low Income School                | 84.358B                          | 18696001027904                                       | 65,577                         |
| Total CFDA Number 84.358B  |                                  |  | 75,963                         |
| Title III Part A English Language Acquisition & Lang. Enhancement            | 84.365A                          | 17671001027904                                       | 7,190                          |
| Title III Part A English Language Acquisition & Lang. Enhancement            | 84.365A                          | 18671001027904                                       | 53,171                         |
| Title III Part A, Immigrant  | 84.365A                          | 18671003027904                                       | 7,804                          |
| Total CFDA Number 84.365A  |                                  |  | 68,165                         |
| ESEA Title II Part A - Teacher & principal Training & Recruiting             | 84.367A                          | 17694501027904                                       | 468                            |
| ESEA Title II Part A - Teacher & principal Training & Recruiting             | 84.367A                          | 18694501027904                                       | 108,228                        |
| Total CFDA Number 84.367A  |                                  |  | 108,696                        |
| Summer School LEP  | 84.369                           | 69551702   | 3,561                          |
| Title IV, Part A, Subpart 1  | 84.424                           | 18680101027904                                       | 7,407                          |
| Total Passed Through Texas Education Agency                                  |                                  |  | 3,818,982                      |
| Total U.S. Department of Education   |                                  |  | 3,818,982                      |
| <b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS</b>                                  |                                  |  | <b>\$ 5,586,056</b>            |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this schedule.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2018

Basis of Presentation

A. Basis of Presentation

The accompanying Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards (the Schedule) includes the federal award grant activity of the District under programs of the federal government for the year. The information on this Schedule is prepared in accordance with the requirements of Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards (Uniform Guidance). Because the Schedule presents only a selected portion of the operations of the District, it is not intended to and does not present the financial position, changes in net assets, or cash flows of the District.

B. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Expenditures reported on the Schedule are reported on the cash basis of accounting. Such expenditures are recognized following Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards, wherein certain types of expenditures may or may not be allowable or may be limited as to reimbursement. The District has elected not to use the 10-percent de minimis indirect cost rate as allowed under the Uniform Guidance.

C. Subrecipients

The District has no subrecipients.

D. Child Nutrition Cluster

The District commingles cash receipts from the U.S. Department of Agriculture with similar State grants. When reporting expenditures on this Schedule, the District assumes it expends federal monies first.

E. Food Donation Program

The District reports commodities consumed on the Schedule at the fair value. The District allocated donated food commodities to the respective program(s) [National School Lunch Program (Non-Cash)] that benefitted from the use of those donated food commodities.

F. Matching Requirements

Certain Federal programs require the District to contribute non-Federal funds (matching funds) to support the Federally-funded programs. The District has met its matching requirements. The Schedule does not include the expenditure of non-Federal matching funds.

MARBLE FALLS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF REQUIRED RESPONSES TO SELECTED SCHOOL FIRST INDICATORS  
 AS OF JUNE 30, 2018

| Data<br>Control<br>Codes   |  | Responses    |
|--|--|--------------|
| SF2  | Were there any disclosures in the Annual Financial Report and/or other sources of information concerning nonpayment of any terms of any debt agreement at fiscal year end?                                   | No           |
| SF4  | Was there an unmodified opinion in the Annual Financial Report?  | Yes          |
| SF5  | Did the Annual Financial Report disclose any instances of material weaknesses in internal controls over financial reporting and compliance for local, state or federal funds?                                | No           |
| SF6  | Was there any disclosure in the Annual Financial Report of material noncompliance for grants, contracts and laws related to local, state or federal funds?   | No           |
| SF7  | Did the school district make timely payments to the Teachers Retirement System (TRS), Texas Workforce Commission (TWC), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and other governmental agencies?                     | Yes          |
| SF8  | Did the school district <u>not</u> receive an adjusted repayment schedule for more than one fiscal year for an over allocation of Foundation School Program (FSP) funds as a result of a financial hardship? | Yes          |
| SF10   | What was the total accumulated accretion on capital appreciation bonds (CABs) included in government-wide financial statements at fiscal year-end?   | \$ 4,930,556 |
| SF11   | Net Pension Assets (object 1920) at fiscal year-end.   | \$ -         |
| SF12   | Net Pension Liabilities (object 2540) at fiscal year-end.  | \$ 7,747,371 |
| SF13   | Pension Expense (object 6147) at fiscal year-end.  | \$ -         |
| In correspondence to all school administrators dated November 1, 2017, the TEA's Director of Financial Compliance stated "For 2017, and until further notice, no data should be entered in the field for data feed Schedule L-1 question SF 13. If the AFR and data feed has been submitted no additional steps need to be taken." |  |              |